

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES • VOLUME 18

TRISTAN

GOTTFRIED VON STRASSBURG

Tristan

Part Two: The Dragon and the Potion

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

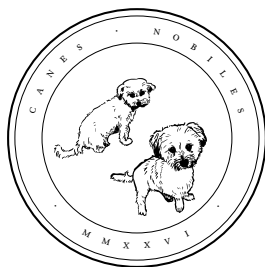


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 18 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Gottfried von Straßburg,
Tristan, herausgegeben von Karl Marold, Erster Teil:
Text (Leipzig: Eduard Avenarius, 1906), verses 5867 to 12434

Set from a page scan of the 1906 printing

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Friedrich Ranke numbers them (1930),
every fifth verse in the outer margin; Marold's own count runs four above
it throughout this part. The paragraphs are the edition's own indented breaks;
the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · Morold's Tribute	7
II · Tristan Hears of It	15
III · The Barons' Answer	27
IV · The Glove	36
V · The Arming	46
VI · The Island	58
VII · Four Against Four	71
VIII · Morold's Death	81
IX · The Poisoned Wound	90
X · The Voyage to Dublin	100
XI · Tantris the Minstrel	110
XII · The Queen's Promise	121
XIII · Isolde's Tutor	133
XIV · Isolde the Siren	142
XV · The Return to Cornwall	155

XVI · The Barons' Counsel	168
XVII · The Second Voyage	180
XVIII · The Merchant	188
XIX · The Dragon	199
XX · The Steward	210
XXI · The Search	222
XXII · Tantris Again	235
XXIII · The Steward's Claim	247
XXIV · The Queen's Answer	260
XXV · The Notch in the Sword	269
XXVI · The Bath	277
XXVII · Tristan's Plea	286
XXVIII · The Proposal	295
XXIX · The King's Peace	306
XXX · The Court Assembles	317
XXXI · The Steward Pressed	331
XXXII · The Tongue	340
XXXIII · The Love Potion	352
XXXIV · At Sea	363
XXXV · The Drink	374
XXXVI · Lameir	384
XXXVII · Brangaene's Counsel	394
XXXVIII · Love's Seed	402
XXXIX · Love Hunted	410

Morold's Tribute

I

Back in Cornwall, Tristan hears that Morold has come from Ireland for tribute. Its history: Gurmun, born in Africa, would share no land with his brother, won Ireland with Rome's leave, and forced Cornwall and England into tribute while Mark was a child. Gurmun married Morold's sister and made him his champion. The tribute was brass the first year, silver the second, gold the third; in the fourth Morold came for thirty boys from each land, and no one dared fight him.

Waz lenge ich nu mê hier an?

Why prolong I now more here on?

der lantlôse Tristan

the landless Tristan

dô der ze Kurnewâle kam,

when he to Cornwall came,

ein mære er al zehant vernam,

a tale he at once heard,

5870

daz ime vil swære was vernomen,

that him very heavy was heard,

daz von Îrlande wære komen

that from Ireland were come

Môrolt der sêre starke

Morold the sorely strong

und vorderte von Marke

and demanded from Mark

mit kampfflichen handen

with combative hands

5875

den zins von beiden landen,

the tribute from both lands,

von Kurnewal und von Engellant.

from Cornwall and from England.

umbe den zins was ez sô gewant:

about the tribute was it so turned:

- der dô ze Îrlanden künic was,
who then in Ireland king was,
- 5880 als ich an der istôrje las
as I in the history read
- und als daz rehte mære seit,
and as the right tale says,
- der hiez Gurmûn Gemuotheit
he was-called Gurmûn Gemuotheit
- und was geborn von Affricâ,
and was born from Africa,
- und was sîn vater künic dâ.
and was his father king there.
- 5885 dô der verschiet, dô geviel daz lant
when he departed, then fell the land
- an in und sînes bruoder hant,
to him and his brother's hand,
- der als wol erbe was als er.
who as well heir was as he.
- Gurmûn was aber sô rîcher ger
Gurmûn was however so rich of-desire
- und alse hôhe gemuot,
and so high of-mind,
- 5890 daz er dekein gemeine guot
that he no common property
- mit niemanne wolte hân.
with no-one would have.
- sîn herze enwolte in niht erlân,
his heart would him not release,
- ern müese selbe ein hêrre wesen.
unless-he must himself a lord be.
- er begunde ûz welen unde ûz lesen
he began out choose and out pick
- 5895 die starken, die muotvesten
the strong, the stout-hearted

und zuo der nôt die besten,
and for the need the best,

die ieman erkande,
whom anyone knew,

ritter und sarjande,
knights and sergeants,

die er mit sînem guote
whom he with his wealth

oder mit höfsllichem muote 5900
or with courtly spirit

zuo ime gewinnen kunde.
to him gain could.

und liez ouch an der stunde
and left also at the hour

sînem bruoder al sîn lant.
to-his brother all his land.

sus kêrte er dannen zehant
thus turned he thence at-once

und nam von den mæren, 5905
and took from the famous,

den gewalteen Rômæren
the mighty Romans

urloup unde botschaft,
leave and commission,

swaz er betwûnge mit kraft,
whatever he should-conquer with force,

daz er daz ze eigen hæte
that he that as own had

und ouch in dâ von tæte 5910
and also them there of should-do

etslîch reht und êre;
some right and honor;

und enbeite ouch dô niht mêre,
and waited also then not more,

er fuor mit einem starken her

he went with a strong army

über lant und über mer,

over land and over sea,

5915 biz daz er ze Îrlande kam

until that he to Ireland came

und an dem lande sige genam

and on the land victory won

und sî mit strîte des betwanc,

and them with battle to-it compelled,

daz si in ze hêren âne ir danc

that they him as lord without their thanks

und ze kûnege nâmen

and as king took

5920 und sît her dar an kâmen,

and since then there to came,

daz si im ze allen zîten

that they him at all times

mit stürmen und mit strîten

with storms and with battles

diu bilant hulfen twingen.

the neighboring-lands helped compel.

in disen selben dingen

in these same things

5925 betwang er ouch ze sîner hant

compelled he also to his hand

Kurnewal und Engelant.

Cornwall and England.

dô was aber Marke ein kint,

then was however Mark a child,

als kint ze wer unveste sint,

as children for defense unsteady are,

und kam alsô von sîner kraft

and came thus by his might

- und wart Gurmûne zinshaft. 5930
and became to-Gurmun tributary.
- ouch half Gurmûnen sêre
also helped Gurmun sorely
- und gab im kraft und êre,
and gave him might and honor,
- daz er Môroldes swester nam;
that he Morold's sister took;
- von dem sô wart er vorhtsam.
from him so became he feared.
- der was ein herzoge dâ 5935
he was a duke there
- und hete ouch vil gerne eteswâ
and would-have also very gladly somewhere
- selbe ein lant besezzen.
himself a land possessed.
- wan er was wol vermezzen
for he was well bold
- und hete lant und michel guot,
and had land and great wealth,
- lîp unde manlîchen muot. 5940
body and manly spirit.
- der was sîn vorvehtære.
he was his champion.
- waz aber des zinses wære,
what however of-the tribute were,
- den man ze Îrlanden sande
that one to Ireland sent
- von ietwederem lande,
from each land,
- des bescheide ich iuch recht und vûr wâr: 5945
of-it inform I you rightly and for true:
- si sanden in daz êrste jâr
they sent them the first year

driu hundred marc messinges

three hundred marks of-brass

und anders keines dinges;

and of-other no thing;

daz ander silber, daz dritte golt.

the second silver, the third gold.

5950 des vierden sô kam Môrolt

of-the fourth so came Morold

der starke von Îrlanden dar

the strong from Ireland thither

ze wîge und ouch ze kampfe gar.

to single-combat and also to combat ready.

vür den sô wurden besant

before him so were summoned

ze Kurnewâle und zEngelant

in Cornwall and in-England

5955 barûne und ir genôze:

barons and their peers:

die giengen ouch ze lôze

they went also to lot

ze sîner gegenwürte,

in his presence,

welher ime antwürte

which to-him should-hand-over

sîn kint, daz dienstbære

his child, that serviceable

5960 und an dem lîbe wære

and in the body were

sô schœne und sô genæme,

so fair and so pleasing,

als ez dem hove gezæme,

as it the court should-befit,

niht megede, niwan knebelîn

not maidens, only little-boys

und solten ouch der drîzec sîn
and should also of-them thirty be

von ietwederem lande;
from each land;

5965

und ensolte dirre schande
and should this shame

nieman anders widerstân,
no-one else withstand,

ez enmüese mit einwîge ergân
it unless-must with single-combat go

oder aber mit lantvehthe.
or else with land-war.

nu enmohtens aber ze rehte
now could-they however by right

5970

mit offelîcher wer niht komen,
with open defense not come,

wan diu lant heten abe genomen.
for the lands had off taken.

sô was ouch Môrolt also starc,
so was also Morold so strong,

als unerbermic unde als arc,
so pitiless and so fierce,

daz wider in lützel kein man,
that against him scarcely any man,

5975

sach er in under ougen an,
saw he him under eyes at,

getorste wâgen den lîp
dared risk the body

iht mêre danne ein wîp.
at-all more than a woman.

und also der zins ûf sine vart
and when the tribute on its way

hin wider Îrlant geschicket wart
back toward Ireland sent was

5980

und daz fünfte jâr in gie,

and the fifth year in went,

sô muosen aber diu zwei lant ie

so must however the two lands ever

iemer ze sunewenden

always at midsummer

die boten ze Rôme senden,

the envoys to Rome send,

5985 die Rôme wol gezæmen,

who Rome well should-befit,

und daz die dâ vernæmen,

and that they there should-bear,

welch gebot und welhen rât

what command and what counsel

der gewaltege sênât

the mighty senate

enbute unde sande

sent-word and sent

5990 einem iegelîchem lande,

to every land,

daz undertân ze Rôme was;

that subject to Rome was;

wan man in alle jâr dâ las

for one them every year there read

und tete in ouch kunt mit mæren,

and did them also known with tidings,

wie sî nâch Rômæren

how they after-the Romans

5995 lois unde lantreht solten wegen,

laws and land-right should weigh,

wie si ir gerihtes solten pflegen;

how they their judgment should practice;

und muosen ouch reht alsô leben,

and must also right so live,

als in dâ lère wart gegeben.

as them there teaching was given.

diz zinsreht unde disen prîsant

this tribute-right and this present

den liezen disiu zwei lant

they let these two lands

in dem fünften jâre ie schouwen

in the fifth year ever see

die werden Rôme, ir frouwen.

the worthy Rome, their lady.

doch butens ir dise êre

yet offered-they her this honor

niht ellîche alsô sêre,

not entirely so sorely,

weder durch reht noch durch got,

neither for right nor for God,

sô durch Gurmûnes gebot.

as for Gurmûn's command.

6000

6005

Tristan Hears of It

II

Tristan finds the barons of Cornwall at Tintajoel drawing lots for their children, weeping and praying. He rebukes them for selling their own nobility to one man's combat: a father should give his life for his child, and to hand children into bondage is against God's command. When they answer that no one can survive Morold, he offers to fight him himself in God's name. God and the right, he says, will be his two helpers, and with his own willing spirit he trusts to survive.

Nu sul wir wider zem mære komen!

Now shall we back to-the tale come!

Tristan der hete wol vernomen

Tristan he had well heard

diz leit ze Kurnewâle;

this sorrow in Cornwall;

6010 ouch was im vor dem mâle

also was to-him before the time

wol kunt, mit welher sicherheit

well known, with what security

der selbe zins was ûf geleit.

the same tribute was up laid.

iedoch sô hôte er alle tage

yet so heard he all days

von der lantliute sage

from the land-folk's talk

6015 des landes laster und sîn leit,

the land's disgrace and its sorrow,

swelhen enden er gereit

whichever ends he rode

vür stete oder vür kastêl;

before towns or before castle;

und als er abr ze Tintajoël

and when he however to Tintajoel

ze dem hovegesinde kam,

to the court-household came,

6020 seht, dâ hôte er unde vernam

see, there heard he and perceived

in gazzen unde in strâzen

in lanes and in streets

von klage al solch gelâzen,

of lament all such bearing,

daz ez in muote starke.

that it him grieved strongly.

vil schiere kâmen Marke

very soon came to-Mark

6025 und hin ze hove mære,

and thither to court tidings,

daz Tristan komen wære:

that Tristan come were:

des wârens alle samet frô.

of-it were-they all together glad.

frô meine ich aber, als ez in dô

glad mean I however, as it them then

nâch ir leide was gewant;

after their sorrow was turned;

wan die allerbesten, die man vant

for the very-best, whom one found

6030

in allem Kurnewâl,

in all Cornwall,

die wâren ze dem mâle

they were at the time

alle dar ze hove komen

all thither to court come

ze laster, alse ir habet vernomen.

to disgrace, as you have heard.

die edelen lantgenôze

the noble land-peers

6035

die giengen dô ze lôze

they went there to lot

ir kinden zeinem valle.

their children to-a fall.

sus vant si Tristan alle

thus found them Tristan all

kniewende unde an ir gebete,

kneeling and at their prayer,

daz iegelîcher sunder tete

that each-one apart did

6040

unschamelîch unde untougen,

unashamed and unbidden,

mit riezenden ougen,

with streaming eyes,

mit innecklichem smerzen

with inward pain

des lîbes unde des herzen,

of-the body and of-the heart,

6045 daz im got der guote

that him God the good

beschirmete unde behuote

should-should and should-guard

sîn edelkeit und ouch sîn kint.

his nobility and also his child.

nu si alle an ir gebete sint,

now they all at their prayer are,

Tristan kam zuo gegangen.

Tristan came thither walking.

6050 wie wart er aber empfangen?

how was he however received?

daz ist iu lîhte geseit:

that is to-you easily told:

Tristan wart von der wârheit

Tristan was in the truth

under allem dem gesinde

among all the household

von keinem muoterkinde

by no mother's-child

6055 noch ouch von Markes gruoze

nor also by Mark's greeting

empfangen niht sô suoze,

received not so sweetly,

als er doch wære getân

as he yet would-be done

und hæte sî diz leit verlân.

and had they this sorrow left.

des nam aber Tristan kleine war,

of-it took however Tristan little heed,

- wan er gienc et baltlîchen dar, 6060
for he went just boldly thither,
- dâ man in daz lôz dâ maz,
where one them the lot there measured,
- dâ Môrolt unde Marke saz.
where Morold and Mark sat.
- »ir hêren,« sprach er, »alle samet
»you lords,« spoke he, »all together
- alle mit einem namen genamet,
all with one name named,
- die hie ze lôze loufent, 6065
who here to lot run,
- ir edelkeit verkoufent,
your nobility sell,
- schamet ir iuch der schanden niht,
shame you yourselves of-the disgrace not,
- diu disem lande an iu geschiht?
that to-this land in you happens?
- sô manhaft, alse ir alle zît
so manly, as you all time
- alle unde an allen dingen sît, 6070
all and in all things are,
- sô soltet ir billîche
so should you rightly
- beide iuch und iuwer rîche
both yourselves and your realm
- ahtbæren unde hêren
esteem and exalt
- und an den êren mêren.
and in the honors increase.
- nu habet ir iuwer frîheit 6075
now have you your freedom
- iuwern vînden geleit
to-your enemies laid

ze füezen und ze handen

at feet and at hands

mit zinslîchen schanden;

with tributary disgraces;

und iuwer edelen kindelîn,

and your noble little-children,

6080 diu iuwer wunne solten sîn,

who your bliss should be,

iuwer lust und iuwer leben,

your delight and your life,

diu gebet ir unde habt gegeben

them give you and have given

ze schalken und ze eigen

as serfs and as bondsmen

und enkunnet niht gezeigen,

and can not show,

6085 wer iuch betwinge dar zuo

who you compels there to

oder welher hande nôt ez tuo,

or what kind need it do,

niwan ein einwîc unde ein man.

except a single-combat and a man.

kein ander nôt ist hier an;

no other need is here on;

und enkunnet under iu allen

and can among you all

6090 an einen niht gevallen,

on one not fall,

der wider einen man sîn leben

who against one man his life

an die wâge welle geben,

in the balance will give,

weder er belîbe oder gesige.

whether he remain or conquer.

nû sî daz, daz er dâ belige,

now be that, that he there fall,

deiswâr so ist doch der kurze tôt

truly so is yet the short death

6095

und disiu lange lebende nôt

and this long living distress

ze himele und ûf der erde

in heaven and on the earth

in ungelîchem werde.

in unequal worth.

ist aber, daz er dâ gesiget

(if)-is however, that he there conquers

und daz daz unreht geliget,

and that the wrong falls,

6100

sô hât er iemer mêre

so has he ever more

dort gotes lôn, hie êre.

there God's reward, here honor.

jâ sulen vetere vür ir kint,

yes shall fathers for their children,

wan sî mit in ein leben sint,

for they with them one life are,

ir leben geben: daz ist mit got.

their life give: that is with God.

6105

ez ist gâr wider gotes gebote,

it is wholly against God's command,

der sîner kinde frîheit

who his children's freedom

der eigenschefte vür leit,

to-the bondage forth lays,

daz er sî ze schalken gebe

that he them as serfs gives

und er mit frîheite lebe.

and he with freedom lives.

6110

sol ich iu rât umbe iuwer leben
(if)-shall I you counsel about your life

nâch gote und nâch den êren geben,
after God and after the honors give,

sô râte ich zwâre dar an,
so advise I truly there on,

daz ir iu kiset einen man,
that you for-yourselves choose a man,

6115 swâ sô man den vinde
where so one him finds

under disem lantgesinde,
among this land-household,

der ze kampfe sî getân
who for combat be made

und an gelücke welle lân,
and to fortune will leave,

weder er genese oder entuo;
whether be survive or not-do;

6120 und bitet den alle dar zuo
and ask him all there to

durch gotes willen allermeist,
for God's will most-of-all,

daz ime der heilige geist
that him the Holy Ghost

gelücke gebe und êre,
fortune give and honor,

und enfürhte niht ze sêre
and fear not too sorely

6125 Môroldes groeze und sîne kraft;
Morold's size and his might;

sî et an gote gemuothaft,
be just in God confident,

der nie dekeinen man verlie,
who never any man abandoned,

der mit dem rehten umbe gie.

who with the right about went.

wol balde gât ze râte:

very quickly go to counsel:

berâtet iuch wol drâte,

advise yourselves very swiftly,

wie ir iuch dirre schande erwert

how you yourselves of-this shame defend

und iuch vor einem manne ernert!

and yourselves before one man save!

geunêret niemer mêre

disbonored never more

iur geburt und iuwer êre!«

your birth and your honor!«

»â hêrre,« sprâchens alle dô,

»ah lord,« spoke-they all then,

»ja ist disem manne niht alsô:

»yes is with-this man not so:

ime kan nieman vor genesen.«

him can no-one before survive.«

Tristan sprach: »lât die rede wesen!

Tristan spoke: »let the speech be!

durch got, versinnet iuch doch noch:

by God, bethink yourselves yet still:

nu sât ir an gebürte doch

now are you in birth yet

allen kûnegen ebengrôz,

to-all kings equal-great,

aller keisere genôz,

of-all emperors peer,

und wellet iuwer edelen kint,

and will your noble children,

diu iu gelîche edele sint,

who to-you equally noble are,

6130

6135

6140

- 6145 versellen unde versachen
sell and forsake
 und ze schalken machen.
and to serfs make.
 und ist daz, daz ir keinen man
and (if)-is that, that you no man
 niht muget geherzen hier an,
not can embolden here on,
 daz er durch iuwer aller leit
that he for your of-all sorrow
- 6150 und durch des landes armekeit
and for the land's misery
 getürre nâch dem rehten
dare by the right
 in gotes namen vehten
in God's name fight
 gegen dem einen manne,
against the one man,
 geruochet ir es danne
(if)-deign you it then
- 6155 an gote gelâzen unde an mich,
to God leave and to me,
 deiswâr, ir hêrren, sô wil ich
truly, you lords, so will I
 mîne jugent und mîn leben
my youth and my life
 durch got an âventiure geben
for God to adventure give
 und wil den kampf durch iuch bestân:
and will the combat for you undertake:
- 6160 got lâze in iu ze guote ergân
God let it you to good go
 und bringe iuch wider ze rehte!
and bring you back to right!

ouch swie mir an der vehte

also however to-me in the fight

iht anders danne wol geschiht,

at-all otherwise than well happens,

daz schadet iu ziuwerm rehte niht.

that harms you in-your right not.

gelige ich an dem kampfê tôt,

(if)-fall I in the combat dead,

6165

dâ mite ist iuwer keines nôt

there with is of-you no-one's need

weder abe noch an gekêret,

neither off nor on turned,

geminneret noch gemêret:

lessened nor increased:

sô stât ez aber rehte als ê.

so stands it however right as before.

sî, daz ez aber ze heile ergê,

be, that it however to good go,

6170

daz ist binamen von gotes gebote:

that is truly by God's command:

des endanket nieman niwan gote.

of-it thank no-one but God.

wan den ich eine sol bestân,

for whom I alone shall undertake,

als ich vil wol vernomen hân,

as I very well heard have,

der ist von muote und ouch von kraft

he is in spirit and also in might

6175

ze Ernestlicher ritterschaft

to earnest knighthood

ein lange her bewæret man:

a long hither tested man:

sô gân ich allerêrest an

so go I first-of-all on

an muote und an der krefte

in spirit and in the strength

6180 und bin ze ritterschefte

and am to knighthood

niht alsô kûrbære,

not so choice,

als uns nu nôt wære;

as us now need were;

wan daz ich aber zer vehte

except that I however in-the fight

an gote und ouch an rehte

in God and also in right

6185 zwô sigebære helfe hân,

two victorious helps have,

die suln mit mir ze kampfe gân.

who shall with me to combat go.

dar zuo hân ich willigen muot,

there to have I willing spirit,

der selbe ist ouch ze kampfe guot;

the same is also to combat good;

und helfent mir die selben drî,

and (if)-help me the same three,

6190 swie unversuoht ich anders sî,

however untried I otherwise be,

sô hân ich guoten trôst dar an,

so have I good comfort there on,

ich genese wol vor einem man.«

I survive well before one man.«

The Barons' Answer

III

The barons thank Tristan but say that none of them has ever dared fight Morold. Tristan answers that pride has often been brought low by small might, and Morold hears him with hatred. Mark tries to hold his nephew back and cannot. Tristan tells Morold before the court that the tribute was taken by force and never by right, and he vows to win back what was taken, down to the last ring, and to plant the war banner in Ireland himself.

»Hêrre«, sprach al diu ritterschaft,

»Lord«, spoke all the knight-hood,

»diu heilige gotes kraft,

»the holy God's might,

diu al die werlt geschaffen hât,

which all the world created has,

diu vergelte iu trôst unde rât

may-it repay you comfort and counsel

und den sæleclîchen wân,

and the blessed belief,

den ir uns allen habet getân.

which you us all have made.

hêrre, lât iu daz ende sagen:

lord, let to-you the end tell:

unser rât mac lûtzel vûr getragen.

our counsel may little forward carry.

solte unser sælde hân geruoht,

should our fortune have deigned,

sô vil sô wir sîn haben versuoht,

so much as we it have tried,

als ofte es ie begonnen wart,

as often it ever begun was,

ez wære niht biz her gespart.

it would-be not until now spared.

6195

6200

- 6205 wir haben niht zeinem mâle,
we have not at-one time,
- wir hie ze Kurnewâle,
we here in Cornwall,
- umbe unser angest rât genomen;
about our fear counsel taken;
- wir sîn an manege sprâche komen
we are to many-a parley come
- und enkunden doch dekeinen nie
and could yet anyone never
- 6210 under uns vinden, ern wolte ie
among us find, unless-be would ever
- sîn kint vür eigen gerner geben
his child for bondsman more-gladly give
- dan er verlür sîn selbes leben
than he should-lose his own life
- wider disen vâlandes man.«
against this devil's man.«
- »wie redet ir sus!« sprach Tristan,
»how speak you thus!« spoke Tristan,
- 6215 »jâ ist der dinge vil geschehen;
»yes is of-the things much happened;
- man hât des wunder gesehen,
one has of-it wonder seen,
- daz unrehtiu hôchvart
that unjust pride
- mit kleiner kraft genidert wart:
with small might brought-low was:
- daz möhte ouch vil wol noch ergân,
that might also very well still happen,
- 6220 der ez getörste bestân.«
who it should-dare withstand.«

Nu Môrolt der hôrte allez an
Now Morold he heard all on

und verdûhte in sêre, daz Tristan
and it-displeased him sorely, that Tristan

sô vaste nâch dem kampfê sprach,
so firmly after the combat spoke,

do er in sô kindeschen sach,
when he him so childlike saw,

und truog im in dem herzen haz.
and bore him in the heart hatred.

6225

Tristan sprach aber dô vûrbaz:
Tristan spoke again then further:

»ir hêrren alle, redet hie zuo,
»you lords all, speak here to,

waz ist iu noch lieb, daz ich tuo?«
what is to-you yet dear, that I do?»

»hêrre,« sprâchens alle dô,
»lord,« spoke-they all then,

»kunde ez iemer werden sô,
»could it ever become so,

6230

der wân, den ir uns habet getân,
the belief, which you us have made,

daz der möhte vûr sich gân,
that it might forth itself go,

daz wære unser aller ger.«
that would-be of-us all desire.»

»ist iu daz lieb?« sprach aber der,
»is to-you that dear?» spoke again he,

»sît daz ez danne an dise frist
»since that it then at this time

6235

und her ze mir behalten ist,
and hither to me kept is,

wil es danne got geruochen,
(if)-will it then God deign,

sô wil ich versuochen,

so will I try,

ob iu got habe ûf geleit

whether you God have up laid

6240 an mir dekeine sælekeit

in me any blessing

und obe ich selbe iht sælden habe.«

and whether I myself any fortune have.«

hie begunde in Marke leiten abe

here began him Mark lead off

mit allen sînen sinnen.

with all his senses.

er wânde im abe gewinnen,

he thought him off gain,

6245 ob erz in lâzen hieze,

if he-it him leave should-bid,

daz er ez durch in lieze.

that he it for him should-leave.

nein er, weizgot, er entete;

no he, God-knows, he not-did;

weder mit gebote noch mit bete

neither with command nor with plea

kund er ime sô vil niht mite gegân,

could he him so much not with go,

6250 daz erz durch in wolde lân;

that he-it for him would leave;

wan gieng et hin, dô Môrolt saz

but went just thither, where Morold sat

und redete aber dô vûrbaz:

and spoke again then further:

»hêrre,« sprach er, »saget mir,

»lord,« spoke he, »tell me,

sô helfe iu got, waz werbet ir?«

so help you God, what seek you?«

- »friunt«, sprach Môrolt sâ zestunt, 6255
»friend«, spoke Morold straightway at-once,
- »wes frâget ir? iu ist wol kunt,
»of-what ask you? to-you is well known,
- waz ich hie wirbe und wes ich ger.«
what I here seek and what I desire.«
- »ir hêrren alle, hœret her,
»you lords all, hear hither,
- der kûnec, mîn hêrre, und sîne man!«
the king, my lord, and his men!«
- sprach aber der wîse Tristan; 6260
spoke again the wise Tristan;
- »mîn hêr Môrolt, ir habet wâr,
»my lord Morold, you have truth,
- ich weiz ez unde erkenne ez gâr:
I know it and recognize it wholly:
- al sî ez lasterbære,
all be it disgraceful,
- ez ist iedoch ein mære,
it is yet a tale,
- daz nieman undertreten mac: 6265
that no-one suppress may:
- man hât den zins nu manegen tac
one has the tribute now many-a day
- von hinnen und von Engelant
from hence and from England
- ze Îrlanden âne recht gesant.
to Ireland without right sent.
- dar zuo brach ez sich lange
there to broke it itself long
- mit michelem getwange, 6270
with great compulsion,
- mit manigem gewalte,
with much violence,

wan man den landen valte

for one to-the lands felled

beidiu bürge unde stete

both castles and towns

und in ouch an den liuten tete

and them also on the people did

6275 sô grôzen und sô manegen schaden,

so great and so many harm,

biz daz si wurden überladen

until that they were overloaded

mit gewalte und mit unrehte,

with violence and with wrong,

unz daz die guoten knehte,

until that the good fellows,

die danooh wâren genesen,

who then-still were saved,

6280 die muosen undertænic wesen

they must subject be

alles, des man in gebôt,

to-all, of-what one them commanded,

durch daz si vorhten den tât,

for that they feared the death,

und enmohten, alse in was getân,

and could, as them was done,

die zît niht anders ane gegân.

the time not otherwise on pass.

6285 als ist daz michel unreht,

so is the great wrong,

als ir noch hiutes tages seht,

as you still today's day see,

an in begangen iemer sât,

on them committed ever since,

und wære zwâre lange zît,

and were truly long time,

daz sî der grôzen swacheit

that they the great disgrace

mit wîge hæten widerseit,

with combat had renounced,

6290

wan sî sint sêre vür komen:

for they are sorely forward come:

diu lant diu habent zuo genomen

the lands they have to taken

an kunden unde an gesten,

in known-folk and in guests,

an steten unde an vesten,

in towns and in fortresses,

an guote und an den êren.

in wealth and in the honors.

6295

man sol ez wider kêren,

one shall it back turn,

daz unze her verkêret ist,

what until now perverted is,

wan unser aller genist

for of-us all survival

muoz sus hin an gewalte wesen;

must thus forth on force be;

sulen wir iemer genesen,

(if)-shall we ever survive,

6300

daz müezen wir beherten

that must we harden

mit wîge und mit herverten.

with combat and with army-marches.

unser dinc stât an den liuten wol,

our affair stands in the people well,

diu lant sint beidiu liute vol.

the lands are both of-people full.

man sol ez uns her wider geben,

one shall it us hither back give,

6305

daz man uns allez unser leben

what one from-us all our life

mit gewalte hât genomen.

with force has taken.

wir suln dar selbe zuo zin komen,

we shall there ourselves to to-them come,

swenne uns got schiereste lât;

whenever us God soonest lets;

6310 swaz man des unseren dâ hât,

whatever one of-the ours there has,

ez sî lûtzal oder vil,

it be little or much,

der mînes willen volgen wil

who of-my will follow will

und mînes râtes dar an pflegen,

and of-my counsel there on keep,

man muoz ez uns her wider wegen

one must it us hither back weigh

6315 unz an den jungesten rinc.

until to the last ring.

ie noch möhte unser messinc

yet still might our brass

ze rôtem golde werden.

to red gold become.

ez ist vil ûf der erden

it is much on the earth

fremeder dinge geschehen,

of-strange things happened,

6320 der man sich minner hât versehen,

of-which one oneself less has expected,

und dirre hêren edeliu kint,

and these lords' noble children,

diu dâ ze schalken worden sint,

who there to serfs become are,

diu möhten noch wol werden frî,
they might still well become free,

swie ungedâht es in doch sî.
however unthought it to-them yet be.

got sî, der mich noch des gewer!
God be, who me still of-it grant!

6325

wan ichs in sînem namen ger,
for I-it in his name desire,

daz ich noch mit mîn selbes hant
that I still with my own hand

den hervanen in Îrlant
the war-banner in Ireland

mit disen lantgenôzen
with these land-peers

alsô müeze ûf gestôzen,
so may up plant,

6330

daz daz lant und diu erde
that the land and the earth

von mir genidert werde.«
by me brought-low be.«

The Glove

IV

Morold warns Tristan off and asks whether Mark's court stands with him; it does. When Morold says they break their oath, Tristan answers that the old agreement allowed tribute or defense, and they choose defense. Morold came in peace with a household army, unready for war; Tristan gives him half a year to raise one, or Cornwall will come to him. Morold turns it into single combat, and Tristan pledges it with his glove, to prove the tribute was never taken by right.

Môrolt sprach aber: »hêr Tristan,

Morold spoke again: »lord Tristan,

næmet ir iuch minner an

took you yourself less on

6335 dirre dinge und dirre mære,

of-these things and of-these tales,

ich wæne, ez iu guot wære;

I think, it to-you good would-be;

wan swaz hier under rede geschiht

for whatever here under speech happens

wirn lâzen doch dar umbe niht,

we leave yet there about not,

des wir ze rehte sûlen hân.«

what we by right shall have.«

6340 hie mite gieng er vür Marken stân:

here with went he before Mark stand:

»kûnec Marke«, sprach er, »sprechet hie,

»king Mark«, spoke he, »speak here,

lât hoeren, ir und alle die,

let hear, you and all those,

die hie ze gegenwûrte sint

who here in presence are

mit mir ze redene umbe ir kint,

with me to speak about their children,

bescheidet mich der mære baz: 6345
inform me of-the tidings better:
 ist iuwer aller wille daz
is of-you all will that
 und lît ouch iuwer muot dar an,
and lies also your spirit there on,
 als iuwer voget, hêr Tristan,
as your guardian, lord Tristan,
 mit worten hie bescheiden hât?«
with words here set-forth has?»
 »jâ, hêrre, eist unser aller rât, 6350
»yes, lord, it-is of-us all counsel,
 unser wille und unser muot,
our will and our spirit,
 swaz er gesprichet oder getuot.«
whatever he speaks or does.»
 Môrolt sprach aber: »sô brechet ir
Morold spoke again: »so break you
 mînem hêrren unde mir
to-my lord and to-me
 iuwer triuwe und iuvern eit 6355
your faithfulness and your oath
 und alle die sicherheit,
and all the security,
 diu under uns allen ie geschach.«
which among us all ever happened.»
 der hœfsche Tristan aber dô sprach:
the courtly Tristan again then spoke:
 »nein, hêrre, ir misseredet hier an;
»no, lord, you misspeak here on;
 ez lûtet übele, swer dem man 6360
it sounds ill, whoever the man
 an sîne triuwe sprichet.
on his faithfulness speaks.

ir aller keiner brichet

of-them all none breaks

weder triuwe noch eit.

neither faithfulness nor oath.

ein gelübede unde ein sicherheit

a vow and a security

6365 wart wîlent under iu getân,

was formerly among you made,

die sol man ouch noch stæte lân,

that shall one also still firm leave,

daz si alle jâr zîrlanden

that they every year to-Ireland

mit guotem willen sanden

with good will should-send

von Kurnewal und von Engellant

from Cornwall and from England

6370 den zins, der in dâ wart benant,

the tribute, which them there was named,

oder aber si satzten sich ze wer

or else they set themselves to defense

mit einwîge oder mit lanther.

with single-combat or with land-army.

sint sî der dinge noch bereit

(if)-are they for-the things still ready

und lœsent ir triuwe unde ir eit

and redeem their faithfulness and their oath

6375 mit zinse oder mit vehte,

with tribute or with fight,

sô tuont siu allez rehte.

so do they all rightly.

hêrre, hie zuo denket ir:

lord, here to think you:

berâtet iuch und saget mir:

advise yourself and tell me:

sweder iu lieber sî getân,
whichever to-you dearer be done,

an swederz ir iuch wellet lân,
on whichever you yourself will leave,

an kampf oder an lantstrîr,
on combat or on land-war,

des sîr ir nû und alle zît
of-it are you now and all time

an uns gewis und ouch gewert.
from us certain and also granted.

ez müezen doch sper unde swert
it must yet spear and sword

under uns und iu bescheiden:
between us and you decide:

nu kiesel under den beiden
now choose between the two

ir einez unde saget uns daz:
of-them one and tell us that:

der zins enlîchet nû niht baz.«
the tribute suits now not better.»

Môrolt sprach aber: »hêr Tristan,
Morold spoke again: »lord Tristan,

hie bin ich schiere komen an;
here am I quickly come on;

ich weiz wol, wederz ich dâ wil.
I know well, which I there want.

mîn ist hie nû niht alse vil,
of-me is here now not so much,

daz ich ze lantstrîre
that I to land-war

iht gewerliche rîte.
at-all defensively ride.

6380

6385

6390

6395 ich fuor von lande über mer

I went from land over sea

mit einem heinlichen her

with a household army

und kam vil frideliche

and came very peaceably

her in disiu rîche,

hither into these realms,

als ich ê mâles hân getân.

as I before times have done.

6400 ich wânde, ez sus niht solte ergân.

I thought, it thus not should go.

ine versach mich dirre geschicht

I expected myself of-this event

an dise lanthêren niht;

from these land-lords not;

ich wânde varn von hinnen

I thought fare from hence

mit rehte und ouch mit minnen.

with right and also with love.

6405 nu habet ir mir wîc vûr geleit,

now have you me combat before laid,

dar zuo bin ich noch unbereit.«

there to am I still unready.«

Tristan sprach: »hêre, ist iuwer muot

Tristan spoke: »lord, (if)-is your spirit

ze einem lantstrîte guot,

to a land-war good,

sô kêret umbe zehant,

so turn about at-once,

6410 vart wider heim in iuwer lant,

fare back home into your land,

besendet iuwer ritterschaft,

summon your knighthood,

besament alle iuwer kraft

assemble all your might

und kumet her wider und lât uns sehen,

and come hitber back and let us see,

wie unde waz uns süle geschehen;

how and what us shall happen;

und tuot ir des niht zwâre

and (if)-do you of-it not truly

6415

in disem halben jâre,

in this half year,

sô nemet ir unser dâ ziu war:

so take you of-us there to-you heed:

sô kome wir sicherlîchen dar.

so come we surely thither.

man hât uns doch hie vor gezalt,

one has us yet here before told,

gewalt hœre wider gewalt

force belongs against force

6420

und kraft wider krefte.

and might against might.

sît man mit ritterschefte

since one with knighthood

lant unde reht sol swachen,

land and right shall weaken,

hêrren ze schalken machen,

lords to serfs make,

und daz ein billich wesen sol,

and that a proper-thing be shall,

6425

so getrûwen wir des gote wol,

so trust we of-it God well,

daz unser aller swacheit

that of-us all disgrace

noch werde wider hin ziu geleit.«

yet be back thither to-you laid.«

»Got weiz«, sprach Môrolt, »hêr Tristan,
»God knows«, spoke Morold, »lord Tristan,

6430 ich hoere vil wol, daz ein man,
I hear very well, that a man,

der nie ze solhem schalle kam
who never to such clamor came

noch dirre drô nie niht vernam,
nor of-this threat never anything heard,

dem wæren disiu mære
to-him would-be these tidings

sorclîch und angestbære:
worrying and fearful:

6435 ich trûwe ir aber vil wol genesen.
I trust them however very well survive.

ich bin ouch dicker dâ gewesen,
I am also often there been,

dâ schallen unde hôchvart
where boasting and pride

mit solher rede getriben wart.
with such speech driven was.

ez ist wol der geloube mîn,
it is well the belief mine,

6440 Gurmûn welle âne sorge sîn
Gurmun will without care be

umbe sîn liut und umbe sîn lant
about his people and about his land

vor iuerm vanen und iuerr hant.
before your banner and your hand.

ouch wirt disiu übermüetekeit,
also is this arrogance,

man breche uns danne triuwe und eit,
one break us then faithfulness and oath,

6445 niemer gespart zÎrlanden:
never spared to-Ireland:

wir suln ez hie mit handen,

we shall it here with hands,

wir zwêne, under uns beiden

we two, between us both

in einem ringe scheiden,

in a ring decide,

weder ir reht habet oder ich.«

whether you right have or I«

Tristan sprach aber: »diz muoz sich

Tristan spoke again: »this must itself

mit gotes helfe erzeigen,

with God's help show,

und müeze den geveigen,

and may him doom,

der unreht under uns beiden habe!«

who wrong between us both has!«

sînen hantschuoch zôh er abe,

his glove drew he off,

er bôt in Môrolde dar:

he offered it to-Morold there:

»ir hêrren«, sprach er, »nemet war:

»you lords«, spoke he, »take heed:

der künec, mîn hêrre, und alle die,

the king, my lord, and all those,

die hie sîn, die hœren, wie

who here are, they hear, how

ich disen kampf bespreche,

I this combat pledge,

daz ich daz reht niht breche;

that I the right not break;

daz mîn her Môrolt, der hie stât,

that my lord Morold, who here stands,

noch der in her gesendet hât,

nor who him hither sent has,

6450

6455

6460

noch mit gewalt kein ander man
nor with force any other man

zins ze rehte nie gewan
tribute by right never gained

6465 ze Kurnewal noch zEngelant:
in Cornwall nor in-England:

daz wil ich mit mîner hant
that will I with my hand

wâr machen und wârbæren,
true make and true-prove,

gote unde der werlt bewæren
to-God and to-the world prove

ûf disen hêren, der hie stât,
on this lord, who here stands,

6470 der unze her gefrumet hât
who until now done has

daz laster und daz ungemach,
the disgrace and the discomfort,

daz disen zwein landen ie geschach.«
that to-these two lands ever happened.»

dâ rief an der stunde
there cried at the hour

von herzen und von munde
from heart and from mouth

6475 manec edeliu zunge hin ze gote,
many-a noble tongue thither to God,

daz got mit sînem gebote
that God with his command

bedæhte ir laster unde ir leit
should-consider their disgrace and their sorrow

und lôste sî von schalcheit.
and should-free them from bondage.

swaz aber ir aller swære

whatever however of-them all grief

von disem kampfē wære,

from this combat were,

6480

daz gie Môrolde kleine

that went to-Morold little

ze herzen oder ze beine:

to heart or to bone:

er was vil unerkomen dâ van.

he was very unfrightened there of.

der wol gestandene man

the well steadfast man

der enleite ez niender nidere,

he laid it nowhere down,

6485

er bôt ouch ime dâ widere

he offered also him there against

des kampfes bewærde

of-the combat proof

mit herter gebærde,

with hard bearing,

mit fierer contenanze.

with fierce countenance.

in dûhte disiu schanze

him seemed this chance

6490

vil wol nâch sînem willen wesen:

very well after his will be:

er trûte ir harte wol genesen.

he trusted it very well survive.

The Arming

V

On the third day the people crowd the shore. The poet will not praise Morold's arming at length; his strength is famous. Mark grieves, expecting nothing but Tristan's death. Tristan is armed in hose and hauberk, a rich surcoat, and a sword Mark girds on him; his helmet carries the arrow, love's prophetess, a sign of what was to come; his silver shield bears a black boar. The poet praises the harmony of the four pieces, the man within them, and his splendid horse.

Nu diz gewisset was alsô,

Now this assured was so,

der kampf der wart den hêrren dô

the combat it was for-the lords then

6495 unz an den dritten tac gespart.

until to the third day postponed.

nu daz der dritte tac dô wart,

now that the third day then became,

dô kam al diu lantschaft

then came all the land-folk

und volkes ein sô michel kraft,

and of-people a so great force,

daz daz stat bî dem mer

that the shore by the sea

6500 allez bevangen was mit her.

all surrounded was with army.

Môrolt fuor wâfenen sich.

Morold went arm himself.

mit des gewæfene wil ich

with his armor will I

noch mit sîner sterke

nor with his strength

mînes herzen merke

my heart's attention

noch mînes sinnes spitze sehe

nor my mind's sharp sight

6505

mit nâhe merkender spehe

with closely observing scrutiny

niht stumpfen noch lesten,

not blunt nor dull,

sô dicke als er zem besten

as often as he to-the best

an rehter manheit ist gezalt:

in right manhood is counted:

diu zal von ime ist manicvalt,

the account of him is manifold,

6510

daz er an muote, an grœze, an kraft

that he in spirit, in size, in might

ze vollekomenener ritterschaft

to perfect knighthood

daz lob in allen rîchen truoc.

the praise in all realms bore.

hie sî des lobes von ime genuoc.

here be of-the praise of him enough.

6515 ich weiz wol, daz er kunde

I know well, that he could

dô und ze aller stunde

then and at every hour

ze kampfe und ouch ze vehte

to combat and also to fight

nâch ritteres rehte

by knight's right

sînem lîbe vil wol mite gân.

to-his body very well with go.

6520 er hete es ê sô vil getân.

he had it before so much done.

Der guote künic Marke

The good king Mark

dem gie der kampf sô starke

to-him went the combat so strongly

mit herzeleide an sînen lîp,

with heart's-sorrow to his body,

daz nie kein herzelôsez wîp

that never any distraught woman

6525 die nôt umb einen man gewan.

the distress about a man gained.

ern hete keinen trôst dar an,

he had no comfort there on,

ez enwære Tristandes tôt

it unless-were Tristan's death

und hæte gerne jene nôt

and would-have gladly that distress

iemer umbe den zins geliten,

ever about the tribute suffered,

6530 daz der kampf wære vermiten.

that the combat were avoided.

nu ergieng ez aber allez baz
now went it however all better

umbe diz und umbe daz,
about this and about that,

umbe zins und umbe man.
about tribute and about man.

der unversuochte Tristan
the untried Tristan

ze nôtlichen dingen 6535
to perilous things

der begunde ouch sich mit ringen
he began also himself with rings

warnen an der stunde,
to-arm at the hour,

so er allerbeste kunde.
as he very-best could.

sînen lîp und sîniu bein
his body and his legs

diu bewârte er schône und wol inein; 6540
them protected he beautifully and well together;

dar über leite er edel werc,
there over laid he noble work,

zwô hosen und einen halsperc,
two hose and a hauberk,

die wâren licht unde wîz,
they were bright and white,

als der meister sînen flîz
as the master his diligence

und alle sîne wîsheit 6545
and all his wisdom

an si hæte geleit;
on them had laid;

zwêne edele sporen starke,
two noble spurs strong,

die spîen im sîn friunt Marke

they buckled him his friend Mark

und sîn getriuwer dienstman

and his faithful vassal

6550 mit weinendem herzen an.

with weeping heart on.

sîne wâfenriemen er im bant

his armor-straps he him bound

alle mit sîn selbes hant.

all with his own band.

ein wâfenroc wart dar getragen,

a surcoat was thither carried,

der was, als ich hôrte sagen,

it was, as I heard say,

6555 mit drîhen in den spelten

with embroideries in the slits

zen fuogen und zen velten,

at-the seams and at-the folds,

ze allen sînen enden

at all its ends

mit fröuwînen henden

with women's hands

in fremedem prîse bedâht

in strange prize conceived

6560 und noch prîslîcher vollebrâht.

and yet more-prizeworthy completed.

hî! dô er den an sich genam,

ah! when he it on himself took,

wie lustic und wie lobesam

how delightful and how praiseworthy

er dô dar inne wære,

he then there in were,

daz wære sagebære,

that would-be tellable,

wan daz aber ichz niht lengen wil.

except that however I-it not lengthen will.

6565

der rede würde alsô ze vil,

of-the speech would-become so too much,

ob ich ez allez wolte

if I it all would

ergründen, alse ich solte.

fathom, as I should.

und sult ir doch wol wizzen daz:

and shall you yet well know that:

der man gezam dem rocke baz

the man befitted the coat better

6570

und truog in lobes und êren an

and bore it of-praise and of-honors on

vil mêre danne der roc den man;

very more than the coat the man;

swie guot, swie lobebære

however good, however praiseworthy

der wâfenroc doch wære,

the surcoat yet were,

er was doch sîner werdekeit,

it was yet of-his worthiness,

6575

der in dô hete ane geleit,

who it then had on laid,

kûme unde kûmeclîche wert.

barely and scarcely worthy.

dar über gurte im Marke ein swert,

there over girded him Mark a sword,

daz sîn leben und sîn herze was,

that his life and his heart was,

von dem er allermeist genas

by which he most-of-all survived

6580

vor Môrolde unde ouch dicke sider.

before Morold and also often since.

und wac daz alsô rehte nider

and weighed that so rightly down

und lag ûf sîner strâze

and lay on his path

in sô gefüeger mâze,

in so fitting measure,

6585 daz ez noch ûf noch nider wac,

that it neither up nor down weighed,

wan rehte, dâ sîn weide lac.

but rightly, where its pasture lay.

ein helm wart ouch besendet dar,

a helmet was also sent thither,

der was als ein kristalle var,

it was as a crystal colored,

lûter unde veste,

clear and firm,

6590 der schœneste unde der beste,

the fairest and the best,

den ie ritter ûf genam.

which ever knight up took.

ich wæne ouch, ie sô guoter kam

I think also, ever so good-one came

in daz lant ze Kurnewâle.

into the land of Cornwall.

dar ûffe stuont diu strâle,

there upon stood the arrow,

6595 der minnen wîssaginne,

of-the love propheticess,

diu sît her mit der minne

which since then with the love

an ime vil wol bewæret wart,

in him very well proven was,

swie lange ez würde dar gespart.

however long it should-be there postponed.

den sazte im Marke ûf und sprach:

it set him Mark on and spoke:

»â neve, daz ich dich ie gesach,

»ah nephew, that I thee ever saw,

6600

daz wil ich gote vil tiure klagen;

that will I to-God very dearly lament;

ich wil dem allem widersagen,

I will to-that all renounce,

des kein man ze fröuden giht,

of-which any man to joys avows,

ist, daz mir leide an dir geschiht.«

(if)-is, that to-me sorrow in thee happens.«

ein schilt der wart ouch dar besant;

a shield it was also thither sent;

6605

an dem hete ein gefüegiu hant

on which had a skillful hand

gewendet allen ir flîz,

applied all its diligence,

und was der niuwan silberwîz,

and was it only silver-white,

durch daz er einbære

because that it matching

helme unde ringen wære.

to-helmet and rings were.

6610

er was aber gebrûniet

it was however burnished

mit lûtere gezieret

with clearness adorned

reht alse ein niuwe spiegelglas.

right as a new mirror-glass.

ein eber dar ûf gesniten was
a boar there on cut was

6615 vil meisterlîchen unde wol
very masterfully and well

von swarzem zobel alsam ein kol.
of black sable just-as a coal.

den leite im aber sîn œheim an.
it laid him again his uncle on.

der stuont dem keiserlîchem man
it stood to-the imperial man

und fuogete im zer sîten
and fitted him at-the side

6620 dô und ze allen zîten
then and at all times

als er dar gelîmet wære.
as it there glued were.

nu daz der lobebære,
now that the praiseworthy,

der genæme kindesche man,
the pleasing childlike man,

Tristan den schilt an sich gewan,
Tristan the shield on himself gained,

6625 nu lûhten disiu vier werc
now shone these four works

helm unde halsperc,
helmet and hauberk,

schilt unde hosen ein ander an
shield and hose one another on

sô schône, ob sî der werzman
so beautifully, if them the workman

alle viere alsô hæte ûf geleit,
all four so had up laid,

- daz iegeliches schônheit 6630
that each's beauty
- dem andern schœne bære
to-the other beauty should-bear
- und sîn geschœnet wære,
and by-it beautified were,
- sone kunde ir aller vierer schîn
so could of-them all four's shine
- ebenliechter niemer sîn.
more-evenly-bright never be.
- und aber daz niuwe wunder, 6635
and however the new wonder,
- daz dar inne und dar under
which there in and there under
- ze schaden und ze sorgen
to harm and to cares
- den vînden was verborgen,
to-the enemies was hidden,
- hete aber daz dekeine kraft
had however that any force
- wider dirre fremeden meisterschaft, 6640
against this strange mastery,
- diu ûzen an gebildet lac?
which outside on shaped lay?
- ich weiz ez wârez alse den tac,
I know it true as the day,
- swie sô der ûzer wære,
however so the outer were,
- der innere bildære
the inner shaper
- der was baz betihtet, 6645
he was better composed,

bemeistert unde berihtet

mastered and arranged

ze ritters figure

to knight's figure

dan diu ûzere faitiure.

than the outer make.

daz werc daz was dar inne

the work that was there in

6650 an geschepfede unde an sinne

in form and in sense

vil lobelîchen ûf geleit.

very praiseworthy up laid.

des wercmannes wîsheit

the workman's wisdom

hî, wie wol diu dar an schein!

ah, how well it there on shone!

sîn brust, sîn arme und sîniu bein

his breast, his arms and his legs

6655 diu wâren hêrlîch unde rîch,

they were splendid and rich,

wol gestalt und edelîch.

well formed and noble.

im stuont daz îsen dar obe

him stood the iron there above

wol und ze wunderlîchem lobe.

well and to wondrous praise.

sîn ors daz habete ein knappe dâ.

his horse that held a squire there.

6660 in Spanjenlant noch anderswâ

in Spain nor elsewhere

wart nie kein schœnerez erzogen.

was never any fairer raised.

ezn was niender în gesmogen;

it was nowhere in sbrunk;

ez was rîch und offen

it was rich and open

zer brust und zuo den goffen,

at-the breast and at the haunches,

starc ze beiden wenden,

strong at both sides,

6665

erwünscht zallen enden.

perfect at-all ends.

sîne fûeze und sîniu bein

its feet and its legs

diu behielten ouch vil wol inein

they kept also very well together

al ir geschepfede unde ir reht;

all their form and their right;

die fûeze sinwel, diu bein sleht,

the feet round, the legs straight,

6670

ûfrihtic alle viere

upright all four

als einem wilden tiere.

as to-a wild beast.

ouch was ez kurzlîcher kust

also was it of-short build

hin vor dem satele und vor der brust;

thither before the saddle and before the breast;

dâ stuont ez alsô rehte wol,

there stood it so rightly well,

6675

als ein ors iemer beste sol.

as a horse ever best shall.

dar ûffe ein wîziu decke lac,

there upon a white caparison lay,

lieht unde lûter alse der tac,

bright and clear as the day,

den andern ringen gelîch,

to-the other rings like,

6680 und was diu lang und also rîch,
and was it long and so rich,

daz sî wol ebene nider gie
that it well evenly down went

dem orse vaste vûr diu knie.
to-the horse firmly before the knees.

The Island

VI

Horse and man fit as if grown together. The combat is set on a small island within sight of the shore, and each champion crosses in his own boat. Morold rides about the island in play. Tristan commends his life to God; landing, he lets his boat drift, since only one man will need to leave. Morold offers to part in love if he may keep the tribute; Tristan refuses. They charge, break their spears, and fight on with swords. The poet argues that it was a battle of four against four.

Nu daz Tristan zer vehte
Now that Tristan for-the fight

nâch ritteres rehte
by knight's right

6685 nâch kampfes gewonheit
by combat's custom

wol und ze prîse was bereit,
well and to prize was ready,

die dô wol kunden prîsen
those-who then well could prize

beidiu man und îsen,
both man and iron,

die kâmen alle samet dar an,
they came all together there on,

6690 daz beidiu, îsen unde man,
that both, iron and man,

geworhten schœner bilde nie.

fashioned fairer image never.

swie wol daz aber schîne hie,

however well that again may-shine here,

ez schein doch vil und verre baz,

it shone yet much and far better,

sît dô er ûf daz ors gesaz

since when he on the horse sat

und sper ze handen genam,

and spear to hands took,

dô was daz bilde lussam,

then was the image lovely,

dô was der ritte lobelîch

then was the knight praiseworthy

obe dem satel und unden rîch.

above the saddle and below rich.

arme und ahsel beide

arms and shoulder both

die heten breite weide.

they had broad pasture.

in den satel kunde er sich wol,

in the saddle could he himself well,

dâ man den satel sitzen sol,

where one the saddle sit shall,

gesetzen unde gefüegen.

set and fit.

hin neben des orses bûegen

thither beside the horse's shoulders

dâ swebeten sîniu schœne bein

there hung his fair legs

strac unde sleht alsam ein zein.

straight and even just-as a rod.

6695

6700

6705

dô stuont daz ors, dô stuont der man
then stood the horse, then stood the man

sô rehte wol ein ander an,
so rightly well one another on,

als ob si wæren under in zwein
as if they were between them two

6710 mit ein ander unde inein
with one another and together

alsô gewahsen unde geborn.
so grown and born.

die gebærde wâren ûz erkorn
the bearings were out chosen

stætelîch und stæte,
steady and constant,

die Tristan ze orse hæte.
which Tristan on horse had.

6715 dar zuo, swie wol gebære
there to, however well fitting

gebærdehalp er wære,
bearing-wise he were,

sô was doch innerhalp der muot
so was yet inside the spirit

sô reine geartet und sô guot,
so purely natured and so good,

daz edeler muot und reiner art
that nobler spirit and purer nature

6720 under helme nie bedecket wart.
under helmet never covered was.

Sus was den kempfen beiden
Thus was to-the champions both

ein kampfstat bescheiden,
a combat-place appointed,

ein kleiniu insel in dem mer,
a little island in the sea,

dem stade sô nâhe unde dem her,
to-the shore so near and to-the army,

daz man dâ wol bereite sach,
that one there well plainly saw,

6725

swaz in der insele geschach.
whatever in the island happened.

und was ouch daz beredet dar an,
and was also that agreed there on,

daz âne dise zwêne man
that without these two men

nieman dar in kâme,
no-one there in should-come,

biz der kampf ende nâme.
until the combat end should-take.

6730

daz wart ouch wol behalten.
that was also well kept.

sus wurden dar geschalten
thus were thither pushed

den kemphen zwein zwei schiffelîn,
to-the champions two two little-boats,

der ietwederz mohte sîn,
of-which each could be,

daz ez ein ors und einen man
that it a horse and a man

6735

gewâfent wol trûege dan.
armed well should-carry thence.

nu disiu schif diu stuonden dâ.
now these boats they stood there.

Môrolt zôch in ir einez sâ;
Morold drew in of-them one at-once;

daz ruoder nam er an die hant,
the rudder took he in the hand,

er schiffete anderhalp an lant.
he sailed across to land.

6740

und alse er ûz zem werde kam,
and when he out at-the isle came,

sîn schiffelîn er iesâ nam,
his little-boat he at-once took,

zuo dem stade hafte er daz.
to the shore fastened he it.

ûf sîn ors er balde saz,
on his horse he quickly sat,

6745 an sîne hant nam er sîn sper,
in his hand took he his spear,

al über den wert sô liez er her
all over the isle so let he hither

rîliche gân punieren,
richly go charging,

hin unde her laisieren;
hither and thither prancing;

und wâren sîn puneize
and were his charges

6750 in dem ernestkreize
in the earnest-ring

sô ringe und sô schimpfbære,
so light and so playful,

als ez ze schimpfe wære.
as it for play were.

Nu Tristan ouch ze schiffe kam,
Now Tristan also to ship came,

sîn dinc dar in zuo sich genam,
his things there in to himself took,

6755 beidiu sîn ors und ouch sîn sper;
both his horse and also his spear;

vorn in dem schiffe dâ stuont er.
forward in the ship there stood he.

»kûnec«, sprach er, »hêrre Marke,
»king«, spoke he, »lord Mark,

nune sorget niht ze starke

now worry not too strongly

umbe mînen lîp und umbe mîn leben,

about my body and about my life,

wir suln ez allez gote ergeben.

we shall it all to-God give.

6760

unser angest hilfet hie zuo niht.

our fear helps here to nothing.

waz obe uns lîhte baz geschiht,

what if to-us perhaps better happens,

dan man uns habe ûf geleit?

than one us has up laid?

unser sige und unser sælekeit

our victory and our fortune

diu enstât an keiner ritterschaft

it stands in no knighthood

6765

wan an der einen gotes kraft.

but in the one God's might.

lât alle vorvorhte wesen,

let all fore-fear be,

wan ich mac harte wol genesen.

for I may very well survive.

mir ist ze disem dinge

to-me is for this thing

mîn gemüete harte ringe.

my mind very light.

6770

als tuot ouch ir! gehabet iuch wol!

so do also you! bear yourself well!

ez ergât doch niuwan alse ez sol;

it goes yet only as it shall;

und aber, swie mîn ding ergê,

and however, however my thing go,

an swelhem ende sô ez gestê,

at whichever end so it stand,

- 6775 sô lâit ir iuch doch hiute,
so leave you yourself yet today,
 iuwer lant und iuwer liute,
your land and your people,
 an den ich mich verlâzen hân:
to whom I myself trusted have:
 got selbe, der mit mir sol gân
God himself, who with me shall go
 ze ringe und ouch ze vehte,
to ring and also to fight,
- 6780 der bringe reht ze rehte!
may-he bring right to right!
 got muoz binamen mit mir gesigen
God must truly with me conquer
 oder mit mir sigelôs beligen:
or with me victory-less lie:
 der walte es unde müeze es pflegen!«
may-he rule it and may it tend!«
 hie mite bôt er in sînen segên.
here with gave he them his blessing.
- 6785 sîn schiffelîn daz stiez er an
his little-boat that pushed he off
 und fuor in gotes namen dan.
and went in God's name thence.
 hie wart sîn lîp und ouch sîn leben
here was his body and also his life
 von manegem munde gote ergeben.
by many-a mouth to-God given.
 im wart von maneger edelen hant
him was by many-a noble hand
- 6790 manec süeze segên nâch gesant.
many-a sweet blessing after sent.
 und also er ûz ze stade gestiez,
and when he out to shore landed,

sîn schiffelîn er fliezen liez

his little-boat he float let

und saz ûf sîn ors iesâ.

and sat on his horse at-once.

nu was ouch Môrolt iesâ dâ:

now was also Morold at-once there:

»sage an«, sprach er, »waz tiutet daz,

»say on«, spoke he, »what means that,

durch welhen list und umbe waz

by what cunning and for what

hâstû daz schif lâzen gân?»

hast-thou the ship let go?»

»daz hân ich umbe daz getân:

»that have I for that done:

hie ist ein schif und zwêne man,

here is a ship and two men,

und ist ouch dâ kein zwîvel an,

and is also there no doubt on,

belîbent die niht beide hie,

(if)-remain they not both here,

daz aber binamen ir einer ie

that however truly of-them one ever

ûf disem werde tôt beliget,

on this isle dead lies,

sô hât ouch jener, der dâ gesiget,

so has also that-one, who there conquers,

an disem einen genuoc,

in this one enough,

daz dich dâ her zem werde truoc.«

that thee there hither to-the isle carried.«

Môrolt sprach aber: »ich hœere wol,

Morold spoke again: »I hear well,

daz diz unwendic wesen sol,

that this unavoidable be shall,

6795

6800

6805

der kampf enmüeze vür sich gân.
the combat must forward itself go.

6810 liezestu in noch understân
wouldst-let-thou it still be-prevented

und schiede wir mit minnen
and parted we with love

ûf solhe rede von hinnen,
on such terms from hence,

daz ich mîn zinsreht stæte
that I my tribute-right firm

von disen zwein landen hæte:
from these two lands had:

6815 daz diuhte mich dîn sælekeit.
that would-seem to-me thy fortune.

wan zwære mir ist sêre leit,
for truly to-me is sorely sorrowful,

ist, daz ich dich slahen sol;
(if)-is, that I thee slay shall;

mirn geviel nie ritter alse wol,
to-me pleased never knight so well,

den ich mit ougen ie gesach.«
whom I with eyes ever saw.»

6820 der gemuote Tristan aber dô sprach:
the spirited Tristan again then spoke:

»der zins muoz fürder sîn getân,
»the tribute must henceforth be done,

sol kein suone under uns ergân.«
(if)-shall any peace between us happen.»

»entriuwen«, sprach der ander dô,
»in-truth«, spoke the other then,

»diu suone wirdet niht alsô:
»the peace becomes not so:

6825 sus kome wir niht ze minnen.
thus come we not to love.

der zins muoz mit mir hinnen.«

the tribute must with me hence.«

»sô trîbe wir«, sprach Tristan,

»so drive we«, spoke Tristan,

»vil harte unnütziu teidinc an.

»very hard useless parley on.

Môrolt, sît daz du danne mân

Morold, since that thou then my

ze slahene sô gewis wilt sîn,

to slay so certain wilt be,

sô wer dich, wellest dû genesen:

so defend thyself, (if)-wilt thou survive:

hie enmac niht anders ane gewesen.«

here may not otherwise without be.«

daz ors daz warf er umbe,

the horse that threw he about,

er machte ûz einer krumbe

he made out-of a curve

eine rihtige slihte.

a straight line.

er lie her gân inrihte

he let hitber go straightway

mit aller sînes herzen ger

with all his heart's desire

mit gesenketem sper;

with lowered spear;

mit fliegenden schenkelen,

with flying thighs,

mit sporen und mit enkelen

with spurs and with ankles

nam er daz ors zen sîten.

took he the horse at-the sides.

wes mohte ouch jener dô bîten,

for-what might also that-one then wait,

6830

6835

6840

dem ez umbe daz leben dô stuont?

to-whom it about the life then stood?

der tete reht als si alle tuont,

he did right as they all do,

6845 die ûf rehte manheit

who on right manhood

alle ir sinne hânt geleit.

all their senses have laid.

er nam ouch eine kêre

he took also a turn

nâch sînes herzen lêre

by his heart's teaching

wol balde hin und balde wider;

very quickly thither and quickly back;

6850 sper warf er ûf und iesâ nider.

spear threw he up and at-once down.

sus kam er her gerüeret,

thus came he hither spurred,

als den der tiuvel fûeret.

as him-whom the devil leads.

beidiu ros unde man

both horse and man

kâmen Tristanden fliegende an

came Tristan flying on

6855 noch balder danne ein smirlîn:

still quicker than a merlin:

als geric was ouch Tristan sîn.

so greedy was also Tristan of-him.

si kâmen mit gelîcher ger

they came with equal desire

gelîche fliegende her,

equally flying hither,

daz sî diu sper zestâchen,

that they the spears shattered,

- daz si in den schilten brâchen
that they in the shields broke 6860
- wol ze tûsent stucken.
well into thousand pieces.
- dô gieng ez an ein zucken
then went it to a drawing
- der swerte von den sîten.
of-the swords from the sides.
- si giengen ze orse strîten:
they went on horse fight:
- got selbe möhte ez gerne sehen.
God himself might it gladly see. 6865
- nu hœere ich al die werlde jehen
now hear I all the world say
- und stât ouch an dem mære,
and stands also in the tale,
- daz diz ein einwîc wære;
that this a single-combat were;
- und ist ir aller jehe dar an,
and is of-them all saying there on,
- hiene wæren niuwan zwêne man.
here were only two men. 6870
- ich prüeve ez aber an dirre zît,
I prove it however at this time,
- daz ez ein offener strît
that it an open battle
- von zwein ganzen rotten was:
of two whole troops was:
- swie daz doch nie kein man gelas
however that yet never any man read
- an Tristandes mære,
in Tristan's tale, 6875
- ich mache ez doch wârbære.
I make it yet true-proven.

Môrolt, als uns diu wârheit

Morold, as us the truth

ie hât gesaget und hiute seit,

ever has said and today says,

der hete vier manne kraft,

he had four men's might,

6880 diz was vier manne ritterschaft:

this was four men's knighthood:

daz was der strît in eine sît.

that was the battle on one side.

sô was anderhalp der strît,

so was on-the-other-side the battle,

daz eine got, daz ander reht,

the one God, the other right,

daz dritte was ir zweier kneht

the third was of-them two servant

6885 und ir gebære dienestman,

and their fitting vassal,

der wol gewære Tristan;

the well true Tristan;

daz vierde was williger muot,

the fourth was willing spirit,

der wunder in den noeten tuot.

which wonders in the straits does.

die viere und jene viere,

the four and those four,

6890 ûz den gebilde ich schiere

out-of them fashion I quickly

zwô ganze rotte odr ahte man,

two whole troops or eight men,

als übel als ich doch bilden kan.

as ill as I yet fashion can.

Four Against Four

VII

Morold, with four men's strength, wounds Tristan in the thigh with a poisoned sword and tells him that only his sister, Queen Isolde of Ireland, can heal him, offering her care if he will concede the tribute. Tristan refuses. The poet cries out for God and the right to come, and they do. Tristan fells Morold and his horse; Morold cuts down Tristan's horse. As Morold remounts, Tristan cuts off his sword hand and strikes his head, and a piece of the sword stays in his skull.

Ê dûhte iuch, daz diz mære

Before seemed-it to-you, that this tale

gâr ungefüege wære,

wholly unfitting were,

daz ûf zwei orsen zwei her

that on two horses two armies

6895

iemer möhten komen ze wer:

ever could come to defense:

nu habet ir ez vür wâr vernomen,

now have you it for true heard,

daz hie zesamene wæren komen

that here together were come

under einem helme ieweder sît

under one helmet each side

vier ritter oder vier ritter strîten;

four knights or four knights' battle;

6900

die riten ouch ze den zîten

they rode also at the times

vaste ûf ein ander strîten.

hard on one another fight.

alsus kam ein geselleschaft,

thus came a company,

Môrolt mit vier manne kraft,

Morold with four men's might,

- 6905 Tristanden als ein dunre an.
Tristan like a thunder on.
- der veige vâlandes man
the doomed devil's man
- der sluoc sô krefteclîche ûf in,
he struck so mightily upon him,
- daz er im kraft unde sin
that he him might and sense
- vîl nâch mit slegen hæte benomen.
very nearly with blows would-have taken.
- 6910 wære ime der schilt ze staten niht komen,
were to-him the shield to aid not come,
- under dem er sich mit listen
under which he himself with arts
- kunde schirmen unde fristen.
could shield and preserve.
- weder helm noch halsperc,
neither helmet nor hauberk,
- noch kein sîn ander kampfwerc
nor any his other combat-gear
- 6915 daz enhæte in dâ niht vür getragen,
that would-have him there not forth carried,
- ern hæte in durch die ringe erslagen;
but-that-he would-have him through the rings slain;
- ern liez im nie die state geschehen,
he let him never the chance happen,
- daz er vor slegen mohte ûf gesehen.
that he before blows could up look.
- sus gieng er in mit slegen an,
thus went he him with blows on,
- 6920 biz er im mit slegen an gewan,
until he from-him with blows on gained,

daz Tristan von der slege nôt

that Tristan from the blows' distress

den schilt ze verre von im bôt

the shield too far from him held

und den schirm ze hôhe truoc,

and the guard too high bore,

biz er im durch daz diech sluoc

until he him through the thigh struck

einen alsô hezlîchen slac,

a so hateful blow,

der vil nâch hin zem tôde wac,

that very nearly thither to-the death weighed,

daz ime daz fleisch und daz bein

that to-him the flesh and the bone

durch hosen und durch halsperc schein,

through hose and through hauberk shone,

und daz daz bluot ûf schræte

and that the blood up spurted

und after dem werde wæte.

and along the isle sprayed.

»wie dô«, sprach Môrolt, »wiltu jehen?

»how now«, spoke Morold, »wilt-thou avow?

hier an maht dû wol selbe sehen,

here on canst thou well thyself see,

daz nieman unreht fûeren sol:

that no-one wrong bear shall:

dîn unreht schînet hier an wol;

thy wrong shows here on well;

noch denke, wellest dû genesen,

yet think, (if)-wilt thou survive,

in welher wîse ez müge gewesen;

in which way it may be;

6925

6930

6935

wan zwâre, Tristan, disiu nôt
for truly, Tristan, this distress

diu ist dîn endeclicher tôt.
it is thy final death.

ich eine enwende ez danne,
I alone unless-turn it then,

6940 von wîbe noch von manne
by woman nor by man

sone wirstest dû nie mêr gesunt:
so becomest thou never more healthy:

du bist mit einem swerte wunt,
thou art with a sword wounded,

daz tædic unde gelüppet ist.
that deadly and poisoned is.

arzât noch arzâte list
physician nor physician's art

6945 ernert dich niemer dirre nôt,
saves thee never from-this distress,

ez entuo mîn swester, eine, Îsôt,
it unless-do my sister, alone, Isolde,

diu künegîn von Îrlande,
the queen of Ireland,

diu erkennet maneger hande
she knows of-many kind

wurze und aller kriute kraft
berbs' and of-all plants' might

6950 und arzâtliche meisterschaft;
and physician's mastery;

diu kan eine disen list
she can alone this art

und anders nieman, der der ist.
and else no-one, who there is.

diu enner dich, dû bist ungenesen.
she unless-saves thee, thou art unsaved.

wil dû mir noch gevolgic wesen,
(if)-wilt thou me still compliant be,

und mir des zinses jehende sîn,
and to-me of-the tribute granting be,

6955

mîn swester, diu künigîn,
my sister, the queen,

diu muoz dich selbe heilen,
she must thee herself heal,

und ich wil mit dir teilen
and I will with thee share

geselleclîche, swaz ich hân,
comradely, whatever I have,

und wil dir nihtes abe gân,
and will thee nothing off go,

6960

dâ dich dîn wille zuo getreit.«
where thee thy will to carries.»

Tristan sprach: »mîne wârheit
Tristan spoke: »my truthfulness

und mîne êre, die engibe ich
and my honor, those not-give I

durch dîne swester noch durch dich.
for thy sister nor for thee.

ich hân in mîner frîen hant
I have in my free hand

6965

dâ her gefüeret zwei frîiu lant,
there hither brought two free lands,

diu varnt ouch mit mir hinnen
they fare also with me hence

oder ich muoz ir gewinnen
or I must them gain

grœzern schaden odr aber den tût.
greater harm or else the death.

6970 ouch enbin ich noch ze solher nôt
also am I yet to such distress

mit einer wunden niht getriben,
with one wound not driven,

daz ez allez hier an sî beliben.
that it all here on be left.

der kampf ist under uns beiden
the combat is between us both

ie noch vil ungescheiden.
yet still very undecided.

6975 der zins ist dîn tôr oder der mîn;
the tribute is thy death or the mine;

hie enmac niht anders ane gesîn.«
here may not otherwise without be.»

Hie mite ruorte er in aber an.
Here with rushed he him again on.

nu sprichet daz vil lîhte ein man,
now says that very easily a man,

ich selbe spriche ez ouch dar zuo:
I myself say it also there to:

6980 »got unde reht, wâ sint si nu,
»God and right, where are they now,

Tristandes strîtgesellen?
Tristan's battle-comrades?

ob si im iht helfen wellen,
whether they him at-all help will,

des nimet mich michel wunder.
of-it takes me great wonder.

si sûment sich hier under:
they delay themselves here under:

6985 ir rotte und ir geselleschaft
their troop and their company

diu ist sêre worden schadehaft;
it is sorely become harmed;

sine komen danne drâte,
unless-they come then swiftly,

sô koment si al ze spâte:
so come they all too late:

von diu sô komen schiere!
from that so come quickly!

hie rîtent zwêne an viere
here ride two against four

6990

und strîtent niuwan umbe ir leben.
and fight only for their life.

daz selbe deist ouch sêre ergeben
the same that-is also sorely given

an zwîvel unde an untrôst.
to doubt and to comfortlessness.

suln si iemer werden erlôst,
(if)-shall they ever be redeemed,

daz muoz vil kurzlîche sîn.«
that must very shortly be.«

6995

got unde reht die riten dô in
God and right they rode then in

mit rehtem urteile,
with right judgment,

ir rotte ze heile,
their troop to salvation,

ir vînden ze valle.
their enemies to fall.

hie begunden sî sich alle
here began they themselves all

7000

gelîche rottieren,
equally troop-together,

viere wider vieren.
four against four.

alsus reit schar wider schar,
thus rode company against company,

und Tristan, alse er wart gewar
and Tristan, when he became aware

7005 der sînen strîtgesellen,
of-the his battle-comrades,

dô wuohs im muot und ellen:
then grew in-him spirit and courage:

im brâhte sîn geselleschaft
him brought his company

beidiu herze unde kraft.
both heart and might.

daz ors er mit den sporen nam:
the horse he with the spurs took:

7010 sô sêre er her gerüeret kam,
so sorely he hither spurred came,

daz er nâch sîner gelust
that he after his desire

hurtende mit des orses Brust
charging with the horse's breast

sîn vînt sô sêre erschalte,
his enemy so sorely stunned,

daz er in zer erden valte
that he him to-the earth felled

7015 mit orse mitalle;
with horse altogether;

und alse er von dem valle
and when he from the fall

ein lützel sich erholte
a little himself recovered

und wider zem orse wolte,
and back to-the horse would,

nu was ouch Tristan iesâ dâ;
now was also Tristan at-once there;

7020 den helm den sluog er ime iesâ,
the helmet it struck he him at-once,

daz er wæte al dort hin dan.

that it flew all there thither off.

hie mite sô lief in Môrolt an:

here with so ran him Morold on:

durch die covertiure er sluoc

through the covering he struck

Tristandes orse abe den buoc,

Tristan's horse off the shoulder,

daz ez under ime dar nider gesaz;

that it under him there down sat;

und er tete weder wirs noch baz,

and he did neither worse nor better,

wan sprang et anderhalp dervan.

but sprang just to-the-other-side thereof.

Môrolt der listige man

Morold the cunning man

den schilt ze rucke er kêrte,

the shield to back he turned,

als in sîn witze lêrte.

as him his wit taught.

mit der hant sô greif er nider,

with the hand so reached he down,

den helm den nam er aber wider.

the helmet it took he again back.

er hete in sîner wîsheit

he had in his wisdom

alsô gedâht und ûf geleit,

so thought and up laid,

so er wider ze orse kâme,

when he back to horse should-come,

daz er den helm ûf næme

that he the helmet up should-take

und rite aber Tristanden an.

and should-ride again Tristan at.

7025

7030

7035

nu er den helm ze sich gewan
now he the helmet to himself gained

und hin zem orse gâhte
and thither to-the horse hurried

7040 und dem alsô genâhte,
and to-it so neared,

daz er die hant zem brîtel liez
that he the hand to-the bridle let

und den linken fuoz gestiez
and the left foot thrust

wol vaste in den stegereif
very firmly into the stirrup

und mit der hant den satel ergreif,
and with the hand the saddle grasped,

7045 nu hete in ouch Tristan erzogen,
now had him also Tristan reached,

er sluog im ûf dem satelbogen
he struck him on the saddlebow

daz swert und ouch die zeswen hant,
the sword and also the right hand,

daz si beidiu vielen ûf den sant
that they both fell on the sand

mit ringen mitalle;
with rings altogether;

7050 und under disem valle
and under this fall

gab er im aber einen slac
gave he him again a blow

reht obene, dâ diu kuppe lac
right above, where the coif lay

und truog ouch der sô sêre nider,
and bore also it so sorely down,

dô er daz wâfen zuchte wider,
when he the weapon drew back,

daz von dem selben zucke

that from the same drawing

7055

des swertes ein stücke

of-the sword a piece

in sîner hîrneschal beleip,

in his skull stayed,

daz ouch Tristanden sider treip

that also Tristan since drove

ze sorgen und ze grôzer nôt:

to cares and to great distress:

ez hete in nâch brâht ûf den tât.

it had him nearly brought on the death.

7060

Morold's Death

VIII

Tristan mocks the staggering Morold, tells him he will need his sister's herbs, and strikes off his head. The Cornish on the shore rejoice and the Irish lament. Tristan, hiding his wound behind his shield, sends the Irish home with their lord's body as the only tribute Cornwall will pay. In Ireland Gurmûn grieves, and the queen and her daughter Isolde mourn over the body. The queen finds the notch in his skull and draws the piece out with tongs, and she and her daughter lay it in a shrine.

Môrolt, daz trôstelôse her,

Morold, the comfortless army,

do er âne kraft und âne wer

when he without might and without defense

sô sêre türmelende gie

so sorely staggering went

und sich an den val verlie,

and himself on the fall abandoned,

»wie dô, wie dô?« sprach Tristan,

»how now, how now?« spoke Tristan,

7065

»sô dir got, Môro!t! sage an,

»so-help thee God, Morold! say on,

ist dir dirre mære iht kunt?

is to-thee of-this tidings anything known?

mich dunket, dû sîst sêre wunt;

me seems, thou art sorely wounded;

ich wæne, dîn dinc übele stê.

I think, thy affair ill stands.

7070 swie ez mîner wunden ergê,

however it with-my wounds go,

dir wære guoter wurze nô:

to-thee would-be of-good herbs need:

swaz sô dîn swester Îsôt

whatever so thy sister Isolde

von erzenîe hât gelesen,

of medicine has gathered,

des wirt dir nô, wil dû genesen.

of-it becomes to-thee need, (if)-wilt thou survive.

7075 der rehte und der gewære got

the right and the true God

und gotes wêrlîch gebot

and God's true command

die hânt dîn unreht wol bedâht

they have thy wrong well considered

und reht an mir ze rehte brâht.

and right in me to right brought.

der müeze mîn ouch vûrbaz pflegen!

he may of-me also further care!

7080 disiu hôchvart diu ist gelegen.«

this pride it is laid-low.«

hie mite trat er im nâher baz;

here with stepped he to-him nearer still;

daz swert daz nam er und gap daz
the sword that took he and gave that

ze beiden sînen handen:
to both his hands:

er sluoc sînem anden
he struck to-his enemy

daz houbet mit der kuppen abe.
the head with the coif off.

7085

sus kêrte er wider zuo der habe,
thus turned he back to the harbor,

dâ er Môrldes schif dâ vant;
where he Morold's ship there found;

dâ saz er in und fuor zehant
there sat he in and went at-once

gein dem stade und gein dem her.
toward the shore and toward the army.

aldâ gehôrte er bî dem mer
there heard he by the sea

7090

grôze fröude und grôze klage,
great joy and great lament,

fröude unde klage, als ich iu sage:
joy and lament, as I you tell:

der sælde an sînem sige lac,
of-those-whose fortune in his victory lay,

den was ein sæleclîcher tac
to-them was a blessed day

und michel fröude erstanden:
and great joy arisen:

7095

si slageten mit handen,
they clapped with hands,

si lobeten got mit munde,
they praised God with mouth,

si sungen an der stunde

they sang at the hour

ze himele michel sigeliet.

to heaven great victory-song.

7100 sô was ez aber der fremeden diet,

so was it however to-the foreign folk,

den leiden gestalten von Îrlant,

the hateful guests from Ireland,

die dar wâren gesant,

who thither were sent,

ze michelem leide ertaget:

to great sorrow dawned:

von den wart also vil geklaget,

by them was as much lamented,

7105 als von disen gesungen.

as by these sung.

si wunden unde twungen

they wrung and forced

ir jâmer under ir henden.

their misery under their hands.

die jâmerigen ellenden,

the miserable exiles,

die klagenden Îrlândære,

the lamenting Irishmen,

7110 di wîle si in ir swære

the while they in their grief

ze schiffe wolten gâhen,

to ship would hurry,

Tristan begunde in nâhen

Tristan began them approach

und an dem stade bekam er in:

and at the shore met he them:

»ir hêrren«, sprach er, »kêret hin,

»you lords«, spoke he, »turn thither,

- enpfâhet jenez zinsreht, 7115
receive that tribute-right,
- daz ir dort ûf dem werde seht,
which you there on the isle see,
- und bringetz iuerm hêren heim
and bring-it to-your lord home
- und saget im, daz mîn œheim,
and tell him, that my uncle,
- der künic Marke, und sîniu lant
the king Mark, and his lands
- diu senden ime den prîsant 7120
they send him the present
- unde enbieten ime dâ bî,
and send-word him there by,
- swenne ez an sînem willen sî,
whenever it in his will be,
- daz ers geruoche unde ger,
that be-it deign and desire,
- daz er sîne boten her
that be his envoys hither
- nâch solhem zins sende, 7125
for such tribute send,
- wir enlâzens îtellhende
we let-them empty-handed
- niemer wider gekêren;
never back turn;
- mit sus getânen êren
with thus made honors
- sende wirs im hinnen,
send we-it him hence,
- swie kûme wirz gewinnen.« 7130
however barely we-it gain.«
- und swaz hier under rede ergie,
and whatever here under speech passed,

mit dem schilte dacte er ie

with the shield covered he ever

daz bluot und die wunden

the blood and the wounds

vor den unkunden.

before the strangers.

7135 und ernerte in ouch daz selbe sider,

and saved him also that same since,

wan jene die kâmen alsô wider

for those they came so back

daz ez ir keiner nie bevant;

that it of-them none never perceived;

wan si schieden dan zehant

for they parted thence at-once

und fuoren hin zem werde sâ

and went thither to-the isle at-once

7140 und funden vür ir hêrren dâ

and found for their lord there

einen zerstücketen man.

a cut-to-pieces man.

den selben fuortens ouch von dan.

the same carried-they also from thence.

Nu sî ze lande kâmen,

Now they to land came,

ze handen si nâmen

to hands they took

7145 den jâmerlîchen prîsant,

the miserable present,

der bî in dar was gesant.

which by them thither was sent.

diu stücke meine ich elliu driu:

the pieces mean I all three:

zesamene leiten si diu,

together laid they them,

daz ieman iht dâ von verlûr;
that anyone anything there of should-lose;

ir hêrren truogen sî si vûr
to-their lord carried they them before

7150

und seiten ime, als ich ê las,
and told him, as I before read,

vil rehte als ime enboten was.
very rightly as him sent-word was.

ich wæne unde versihe mich wol,
I think and expect myself well,

des ich mich wol versehen sol,
of-it I myself well expect shall,

der kûnec Gurmûn Gemuotheit,
the king Gurmun Gemuotheit,

7155

der hete unmuot und michel leit
he had displeasure and great sorrow

und gieng in ouch des nôt an:
and went him also of-it need on:

er verlôs an disem einen man
he lost in this one man

herze unde muot, trôst unde kraft
heart and spirit, comfort and might

und maneges mannes ritterschaft.
and many-a man's knighthood.

7160

diu schîbe, diu sîn êre truoc,
the disk, which his honor bore,

die Môrolt frîliche sluoc
which Morold freely struck

in den bîlanden allen,
in the neighboring-lands all,

diu was dô nider gevallen.
it was then down fallen.

diu kûnigîn, sîn swester,
the queen, his sister,

7165

der leit was aber noch vester,
whose sorrow was however still firmer,

ir jâmer unde ir klagenôt.
her misery and her lament-need.

si unde ir tochter Îsôt
she and her daughter Isolde

si quelten manege wîs ir lîp,
they tormented many-a way their body,

7170 als ir wol wizzet, daz diu wîp
as you well know, that the women

vil nâhe gênde klage hânt,
very near going lament have,

dâ in diu leit ze herzen gânt.
where to-them the sorrows to heart go.

si sâhen disen tôten man
they saw this dead man

durch niht niwan durch jâmer an,
for nothing but for misery at,

7175 durch daz ir herzeswære
so that their heart's-grief

al deste grœzer wære.
all the greater were.

daz houbet kustens und die hant,
the head kissed-they and the hand,

diu in liute unde lant
whiche them people and land

hete gemachet undertân,
bad made subject,

7180 als ich hie vor gesaget hân.
as I here before said have.

des houbetes wunden

the head's wounds

besâhens oben und unden

examined-they above and below

ange unde jâmerliche.

closely and miserably.

nu ersach diu sinnerîche,

now espied the clever,

diu wîse küniginne

the wise queen

die scharten dar inne.

the notch there within.

si besande ein kleinez zengelin,

she sent-for a little tongs,

dâ mite sô reichte sî dar in

there with so reached she there in

unde gewan die scharten dan.

and got the notch thence.

si unde ir tochter sâhens an

she and her daughter saw-it at

mit jâmer und mit leide

with misery and with sorrow

und nâmen sî dô beide

and took it then both

und leiten sî in einen schrîn,

and laid it in a shrine,

dâ sît daz selbe stuckelîn

where since the same little-piece

Tristanden brâhte ze nôt.

Tristan brought to distress.

7185

7190

7195

The Poisoned Wound

IX

Gurmun orders every Cornish person who comes to Ireland killed, and many innocents die of it. In Cornwall Tristan is welcomed with joy, but no physician can heal the poisoned wound; it discolors him and stinks, and he sees that he has become a burden to his friends. Remembering Morold's words about the queen, he resolves to go to Ireland, whether to live or die. With Mark he agrees that the court will be told he has gone to Salerno. Kurvenal joins him, and he takes only his harp.

Nu hêrre Môrolt der ist tôt.

Now lord Morold he is dead.

tribe ich nu michel mære

drove I now much tale

von ir aller swære

of their all grief

und von ir klage, waz hülfe daz?

and of their lament, what would-help that?

7200 uns wære nihtes deste baz.

to-us would-be of-nothing the better.

wer möhte ir aller leit beklagen?

who could their all sorrow lament?

Môrolt der wart ze grabe getragen,

Morold he was to grave carried,

begraben also ein ander man.

buried as an other man.

Gurmûn dô trûren began

Gurmun then mourn began

7205 und hiez gebieten al zehant

and bade command all at-once

über al daz rîche ze Îrlant,

over all the realm of Ireland,

daz man genôte næme war,

that one closely should-take heed,

swaz in der werlde lebendes dar
whatever in the world living thither

von Kurnewâle kâme,
from Cornwall should-come,

daz man im den lîp nâme, 7210
that one him the life should-take,

ez wære wîp oder man.
it were woman or man.

diz gebot und dirre ban
this command and this ban

der gie vûr sich sô sêre,
it went before itself so sorely,

daz nieman keine kêre
that no-one any turn

ze keiner slahte stunde 7215
at any kind hour

dâ hin gehaben kunde
there thither have could

von kurnewalscher diete,
of Cornish folk,

daz er dekeine miete
that he any reward

mohte gebieten oder gegeben,
could offer or give,

ez engienge im niuwan an daz leben, 7220
it not-went him only on the life,

biz maneger muoter kint dâ van
until many-a mother's child there from

unschuldeclîchen schaden gewan;
innocent harm got;

und was daz allez âne nôt,
and was that all without need,

wan Môrolt lac billichen tôr;
for Morold lay rightly dead;

7225 der was niwan an sîner kraft
he was only in his might

und niht an gote gemuothaft
and not in God confident

und fuorte zallen zîten
and bore at-all times

ze allen sînen strîten
to all his battles

gewalt unde hôchvart,
force and pride,

7230 in den er ouch gevellet wart.
in which he also felled was.

Nu grîfe wider, dâ ich ez liez.
Now reach back, where I it left.

Tristan dô der ze stade gestiez
Tristan when he to shore landed

âne ros und âne sper,
without horse and without spear,

nu kâmen tûsent rotte her
now came thousand troops hither

7235 gedrunge mit ir gruoze
thronged with their greeting

ze orse und ze fuoze:
on horse and on foot:

si enpfingen in frôliche.
they received him joyfully.

künec unde künicrîche
king and kingdom

dien gelebeten nie sô lieben tac,
they lived never so dear day,

7240 des man in wol getrûwen mac;
of-it one them well trust may;

wan in was ûf erstanden

for to-them was up risen

grôz êre ûz sînen handen:

great honor out-of his hands:

ir aller laster unde ir leit

of-them all disgrace and their sorrow

daz hete er eine hine geleit.

that had he alone away laid.

und aber die wunden, die er truoc,

and however the wounds, which he bore,

7245

die beklageten sî genuoc

they lamented they enough

und gieng in sêre nâhen;

and went them sorely near;

wan sî sich aber versâhen,

for they themselves however expected,

daz er von dirre swære

that he from this grief

schiere genesen wære,

soon healed were,

7250

done ahten sîz ze nihte,

then reckoned they-it at nothing,

si fuorten in inrihte

they led him straightway

hin wider zem palas under in.

thither back to-the palace among them.

wol balde entwâfenten si in

very quickly disarmed they him

und schuofen ime senfte unde gemach,

and made him ease and comfort,

7255

als er oder ieman vor sprach.

as he or anyone before spoke.

arzâte man besande

physicians one summoned

von bürgen und von lande

from castles and from land

die allerbesten, die man vant.

the very-best, whom one found.

7260 wie dô? die wâren besant,

how then? they were summoned,

die leiten allen ir sin

they laid all their sense

mit arzâtlichem liste an in.

with physician's art on him.

waz truoc daz vür odr waz half daz?

what bore that forward or what helped that?

im was doch nihtes deste baz.

to-him was yet of-nothing the better.

7265 daz si alle samet wisten,

what they all together knew,

von arzâtlichen listen,

of physician's arts,

daz enmohte im niht ze staten gestân:

that could him not to aid stand:

daz gelüppe was alsô getân,

the poison was so made,

daz si ez mit nihte kunden

that they it with nothing could

7270 gescheiden von der wunden,

separate from the wound,

unz ez im al den lîp ergienc

until it him all the body went-through

und eine varwe gevienc

and a color caught

sô jæmerlicher hande,

so miserable kind,

daz man in kûme erkande.

that one him barely knew.

dar zuo gevie der selbe slac

there to caught the same blow

7275

einen sô griulichen smac,

a so horrible stench,

daz ime daz leben swærete,

that him the life grieved,

sîn eigen lîp unsmærete.

his own body grew-loathsome.

ouch was sîn meistez ungemach,

also was his greatest discomfort,

daz er daz alle zît wol sach,

that he that all time well saw,

7280

daz er den begunde swæren,

that he to-those began be-grievous,

die sîne friunde ê wæren,

who his friends before were,

und erkande ie baz unde baz

and recognized ever better and better

Môroldes rede; ouch hete er daz

Morold's speech; also had he that

ê mâles dicke wol vernomen,

before times often well heard,

7285

wie schœne und wie vollekomen

how fair and how perfect

Îsôt sîn swester wære;

Isolde his sister were;

wan von ir floug ein mære

for from her flew a tale

in allen den bîlanden,

in all the neighboring-lands,

diu ir namen erkanden:

which her name knew:

7290

diu wîse Îsôt, diu schœne Îsôt,
the wise Isolde, the fair Isolde,

diu liuhtet alse der morgenrôt.
she shines as the morning-red.

Tristan der sorchafte man
Tristan the anxious man

hie gedâhte er zallen zîten an
here thought he at-all times on

7295 und wiste wol, solte er genesen,
and knew well, should he survive,

daz enkûnde niemer gewesen
that could never be

wan eine von ir liste,
except alone by her art,

diu disen list dâ wiste,
who this art there knew,

diu sinnerîche künigîn.
the clever queen.

7300 wie ez aber möhte gesîn,
how it however might be,

des unkunde er niht betrahten.
of-it could he not consider.

nu begunde er aber daz ahten,
now began he however that consider,

sît ez sîn tôt doch wære,
since it his death yet were,

sô wære im alse mære
so would-be to-him as much

7305 der lîp gewâget oder tôt
the body risked or dead

als disiu tôtliche nôt.
as this deadly distress.

hie mite besatzte er sînen sin,
here with fixed he his mind,

er wolte binamen dâ hin,

he would truly there thither,

ez ergienge im, swie got wolte,

it should-go to-him, however God would,

genese, obe er solte.

survive, if he should.

7310

sînen œheim den besande er:

his uncle him summoned he:

er seite im al von ende her

he told him all from end hither

sîn tougen unde sînen muot,

his secret and his spirit,

als ein friunt sînem friunde tuot,

as a friend to-his friend does,

wes im wille wære

what to-him will were

7315

nâch Môroldes mære.

after Morold's tale.

diz geviel im übele unde wol,

this pleased him ill and well,

wan daz man schaden ze nœten sol

except that one harm to needs shall

dulten, als man beste kan.

endure, as one best can.

under zwein übelen kiese ein man,

between two ills choose a man,

7320

daz danne minner übel ist:

what then less ill is:

daz selbe ist ouch ein nütze list.

the same is also a useful art.

sus wurden sî zwêne under in zwein

thus became they two between them two

ir dinges alles incin,

of-their matter all together,

- 7325 als ez ouch allez gendet wart,
as it also all ended was,
- wie er volante sîne vart;
how he completed his journey;
- wie manz verswîgen solte,
how one-it keep-silent should,
- daz er ze Îrlanden wolte,
that he to Ireland would,
- wie man solte sagen mære,
how one should say tidings,
- 7330 daz er in Salerne wære
that he in Salerno were
- durch sînes lîbes genist.
for his body's healing.
- nu disiû rede besetzt ist,
now this speech settled is,
- Kurvenal wart ouch besant.
Kurvenal was also summoned.
- dem selben seitens ouch zehant
to-the same told-they also at-once
- 7335 ir beider willen unde ir muot.
of-them of-both will and their spirit.
- diz dûhte Kurvenâlen guot
this seemed to-Kurvenal good
- und jach, er wolte mit im wesen,
and said, he would with him be,
- mit ime ersterben oder genesen.
with him die or survive.
- und alse ez âbende wart,
and when it evening became,

nu bereite man in zuo zir vart
now prepared one them to to-their journey

7340

eine barken unde ein schiffelîn
a barge and a little-boat

und schuof in vollen rât dar in
and made them full supply there in

an lîpnar unde an spîse,
in food and in provisions,

an andere schifwîse.
in other ship-fashion.

dâ wart der arme Tristan
there was the poor Tristan

7345

mit maneger klage getragen an
with much lament carried on

vil tougenlîchen unde alsô,
very secretly and so,

daz dirre schiffunge dô
that of-this voyage then

vil lûtzel ieman wart gewar,
very little anyone became aware,

wan die man ouch besande dar.
except those-whom one also summoned thither.

7350

sînem œheime Marke
to-his uncle Mark

dem bevalch er harte starke
to-him commended he very strongly

sîn gesinde und ander sîn dinc,
his household and other his things,

daz sînes dinges iemer rinc
that of-his affairs ever ring

von ein ander kâeme,
from one another should-come,

7355

biz man von ime vernæme

until one from him should-bear

gewislichiu mære,

certain tidings,

wie ez ime ergangen wære.

how it him gone were.

sîne harphen er besande,

his harp he sent-for,

7360 die fuorte er ouch von lande

that took he also from land

und sînes dinges nie niht mê.

and of-his things never anything more.

hie mite sô stiezens an den sê.

here with so pushed-they on the sea.

The Voyage to Dublin

X

Tristan sails with eight men sworn to secrecy, and all Cornwall grieves for him. Near Dublin he has himself dressed in rags and set adrift in a small boat with his harp and food for a few days. He sends Kurvenal home: Mark is to be told that he lives and will return within the year; the court that he died on the way; if he does not come back, Kurvenal is to take his people to Rual in Parmenie. Kurvenal leaves him weeping, and Tristan drifts alone until morning.

Sus fuoren sî von dannen

Thus went they from thence

niwan mit ahte mannen;

only with eight men;

- die selben heten ouch ir leben 7365
the same had also their life
- ze bürgen und ze pfande gegeben
to pledge and to pawn given
- und ouch versichert bî gote,
and also assured by God,
- daz si ûz ir zweier gebote
that they out-of their two's command
- niemer fuoz getræten.
never foot should-step.
- nu si geschiffet hæten 7370
now they shipped had
- und Marke nâch Tristande sach,
and Mark after Tristan looked,
- sîn kurzewîle und sîn gemach,
his pastime and his comfort,
- ich weiz wol, daz was kleine.
I know well, that was little.
- ze herzen und ze beine
to heart and to bone
- gieng ime daz selbe scheiden, 7375
went him the same parting,
- wan daz ez aber in beiden
except that it however to-them both
- ze fröuden und ze liebe kam.
to joys and to love came.
- nu daz daz lantvolc vernam,
now that the land-folk heard,
- mit wie getâner swære
with what kind grief
- Tristan gevaren wære 7380
Tristan gone were
- hin wider Salerne durch genesen,
thither toward Salerno for healing,

wære er ir aller kint gewesen,
were he of-them all child been,

sîn leit enwære in allen nie
his sorrow would-be to-them all never

nâher gegangen, danne ez gie;
nearer gone, than it went;

7385 und wan im ouch sîn ungemach
and because him also his discomfort

in ir dienste geschach,
in their service happened,

al deste nâher gieng ez in.
all the nearer went it them.

nu Tristan der fuor allez hin
now Tristan he went ever thither

über state und über maht
beyond strength and beyond might

7390 beidiu tac unde naht
both day and night

die rihte wider Îrlant,
the direction toward Ireland,

als in des marnæres hant
as him the mariner's hand

wol geleiten kunde.
well guide could.

und als daz schif begunde
and when the ship began

7395 Îrlande alsô genâhen,
to-Ireland so near,

daz sî daz lant wol sâhen,
that they the land well saw,

Tristan den sturmeister bat,
Tristan the helmsman bade,

daz er sich gein der houbetstat
that he himself toward the capital

ze Develîne wante,
at Dublin turned,

wan er daz wol erkante,
for he that well knew,

7400

daz diu wîse küniginne
that the wise queen

hæte ir wesen dar inne.
had her dwelling there within.

des endes er dô gâhete;
of-that end he then hurried;

und alse er ir genâhete,
and when he it neared,

daz er si kôs und ebene sach,
that he it perceived and plainly saw,

7405

»seht, hêrre,« er zuo Tristande sprach,
»see, lord,« he to Tristan spoke,

»ich sihe die stat: waz râtet ir?«
»I see the city: what advise you?«

Tristan dô sprach: »dâ sulen wir
Tristan then spoke: »there shall we

hie enkeren unde belîben,
here anchor and remain,

disen âbent hie vertrîben
this evening here pass

7410

und ouch der naht ein teil hie sîn.«
and also of-the night a part here be.«

sus wurfen sî den anker in
thus cast they the anchor in

und ruoweten den âbent dâ.
and rested the evening there.

und in der naht dô hiez er sâ
and in the night then bade he at-once

7415 gein der stat hin lâzen gân.
toward the city thither let go.

und alse daz dô was getân,
and when that then was done,

daz sî sô nâhe kâmen
that they so near came

daz si ir gemerke nâmen
that they their bearing took

eine halbe mîle von der stat,
a half mile from the city,

7420 Tristan ime dô geben bat
Tristan him then give bade

daz allerermeste gewant,
the very-poorest garment,

daz man in der barken vant.
that one in the barge found.

und als man ime daz ane getete,
and when one him that on put,

er hiez sich legen an der stete
he bade himself lay at the place

7425 ûz der barken in daz schiffelîn.
out-of the barge into the little-boat.

sîne harphen hiez er ouch dar in
his harp bade he also there in

und in der mâze spîse geben,
and in the measure food give,

daz er ir möhte geleben
that he of-it could live

drî tage oder viere.
three days or four.

nu diz was allez schiere

now this was all quickly

7430

nâch sînem willen getân.

after his will done.

Kurvenâlen hiez er vür sich gân

Kurvenal bade he before himself go

und ouch die schifman mit im:

and also the shipmen with him:

»friunt Kurvenal,« sprach er, »nu nim

»friend Kurvenal,« spoke he, »now take

dise barken und diz liut an dich

this barge and these people to thee

7435

und pflig ir schône und wol durch mich

and tend them beautifully and well for me

alle stunde und alle zît!

all hours and all time!

und alse ir wider komen sît,

and when you back come are,

sô lône in alsô rîche,

so reward them so richly,

daz si unser heinliche

that they our secret

7440

getriuweliche mit uns tragen

faithfully with us bear

und nieman niht hier umbe sagen.

and no-one nothing here about tell.

und kêre balde wider heim;

and turn quickly back home;

grüeze mînen æheim

greet my uncle

7445 und sage im daz, daz ich noch lebe

and tell him that, that I still live

und müge ouch noch mit gotes gebe

and may also still with God's gift

wol vürbaz leben unde genesen:

well further live and survive:

er ensol niht leidic umbe mich wesen.

he shall not sorrowful about me be.

und sage im daz zewâre,

and tell him that truly,

7450 ich kome in disem jâre,

I come in this year,

ist daz, daz ich genesen sol;

(if)-is that, that I survive shall;

gelinget mînen dingen wol,

(if)-succeeds my affairs well,

daz wirt im schiere bekant.

that becomes to-him soon known.

sage in den hof und in daz lant,

say in the court and in the land,

7455 daz ich belîbe in dirre nôt

that I remain in this distress

under wegen ûf der verte tôt.

on way on the journey dead.

mîn gesinde, daz ich noch dâ habe,

my household, which I still there have,

des lâ binamen niht komen abe;

of-it let truly nothing come off;

sich, daz si mîn dâ bîten

see, that they for-me there wait

7460 biz zuo den selben zîten,

until to the same times,

als ich dir hie gesaget hân.

as I thee here told have.

und ist ez aber alsô getân,

and (if)-is it however so done,

daz mir in dirre jâres frist

that to-me in this year's span

gelücke niht geschehen ist,

fortune not happened is,

sô muget ir iuch mîn wol bewegen,

so may you yourselves of-me well give-up,

sô lât ir got der sêle pflegen

so let you God the soul tend

und nemet ir iuwer selbe war:

and take you your self heed:

sô nim du mîn liut unde var

so take thou my people and fare

hin heim ze Parmenîe wider

thither home to Parmenie back

und lâ dich bî Rûâle nider,

and let thyself by Rual down,

mînem lieben vater; dem sage von mir,

my dear father; to-him tell of me,

daz er mir mîner triuwe an dir

that he me of-my faithfulness in thee

durch sîne triuwe lône

for his faithfulness reward

und biete dir ez schône

and offer thee it beautifully

und tugentlîche, als er wol kan,

and virtuously, as he well can,

und underwîse in ouch dar an:

and instruct him also there on:

die mir habent gedienet her,

those-who me have served hither,

7465

7470

7475

daz er mich an den gewer
that he me in those grant

einer bete und keiner mê:
one request and none more:

7480 als iegeliches dienest stê,
as each's service stand,

daz er im danke und lône alsô.
that he him thank and reward so.

nu, lieben liute,« sprach er dô,
now, dear people,« spoke he then,

»hie mite sô sît ir gote ergeben,
»here with so are you to-God given,

vart iuwer strâze und lât mich sweben:
fare your road and let me drift:

7485 ich muoz ze disen zîten
I must at these times

der gotes genâden bîten;
of-the God's mercies wait;

sô habet ouch ir zît, daz ir vart,
so have also you time, that you fare,

iuwern lîp und iuwer leben bewart:
your body and your life preserve:

ez nâhet vaste gein dem tage.«
it nears fast toward the day.«

7490 sus kêrten sî mit maneger klage
thus turned they with much lament

und mit manegem jâmer hin;
and with much misery thither;

mit manegem trahene liezens in
with many tears left-they him

swebende ûf dem wilden sê.
drifting on the wild sea.

in getete nie scheiden alse wê.
him did never parting so woe.

ein iegelich getriuwer man, 7495
an each faithful man,

der ie getriuwen friunt gewan
who ever faithful friend gained

und weiz, wie man den meinen sol,
and knows, how one him cherish shall,

entriuwen der verstât sich wol
in-truth he understands himself well

umbe Kurvenâles swære;
about Kurvenal's grief;

swie swære im aber wære 7500
however heavy to-him however were

al sîn herze und al sîn sin,
all his heart and all his mind,

dô schiffete er doch allez hin.
then sailed he yet ever thither.

Tristan beleip al eine dâ:
Tristan remained all alone there:

der swebete dâ wâ unde wâ
he drifted there where and where

mit jâmer und mit sorgen 7505
with misery and with cares

unz an den liechten morgen.
until to the bright morning.

Tantris the Minstrel

XI

Men from Dublin find the drifting boat and hear sweet harping from it, though the poet notes that Tristan plays without his heart in it. Seeing him so wretched, they marvel at his skill. He tells them he was a court minstrel turned merchant out of greed; pirates killed his partner and crew and spared him for his harp, and he has drifted forty days. They bring him into Dublin, where the townspeople pity him and pay a physician to take him in, but the physician's art helps little.

und also die von Develîn

and when those from Dublin

daz wîselôse schiffelîn

the guideless little-boat

in dem wâge ersâhen,

in the waves espied,

7510 si hiezen balde gâhen

they bade quickly hurry

und nemen des schiffelînes war.

and take of-the little-boat heed.

die boten die kêrten iesâ dar.

the envoys they turned at-once thither.

nu sî begunden nâhen

now they began approach

und dennoch nieman sâhen,

and still no-one saw,

7515 nu gehôrtens al dort her

now heard-they all there thither

suoze unde nâch ir herzen ger

sweetly and after their heart's desire

eine süeze harphen klingen

a sweet harp sound

und mit der harphen singen

and with the harp sing

einen man so rehte suoze,

a man so right sweetly,

daz sîz in zeinem gruoze

that they-it for-them as-a greeting

7520

und ze âventiure nâmen

and as adventure took

und von der stat nie kâmen,

and from the place never came,

die wîle er harphete unde sanc.

the while he harped and sang.

diu fröude diu was aber unlanc,

the joy it was however short,

der si von im heten an der stete;

whiche they from him had at the place;

7525

wan swaz er in dâ spils getete

for whatever he them there of-play did

mit handen oder mit munde,

with hands or with mouth,

daz engie niht von grunde:

that went not from ground:

daz herze dazn was niht dermite.

the heart that was not therewith.

so enist ez ouch niht spiles site,

so is it also not play's custom,

7530

daz man ez dekeine wîle tuo,

that one it any while do,

daz herze daz enstê derzuo;

the heart it unless-stand thereto;

al eine geschehe es harte vil,

even though happen it very much,

ez enheizet doch niht rehte spil,

it is-called yet not rightly play,

daz man sus ûzen hin getuot

what one thus outwardly away does

7535

âne herze und âne muot.

without heart and without spirit.

wan daz diu jugent Tristanden

except that the youth Tristan

mit munde und ouch mit handen

with mouth and also with hands

ir zeiner kurzewîle twanc,

to-them as-a pastime forced,

7540 daz er ir harphete unde sanc,

that he to-them harped and sang,

ez was dem marterære

it was to-the martyr

ein marter unde ein swære.

a torment and a grief.

und alse er sîn spil dô verliez,

and when he his play then left,

daz ander schif dô nâher stiez:

the other ship then nearer pushed:

7545 sus griffens an sîn schiffelîn

thus grasped-they at his little-boat

und warten widerstrît dar in;

and looked vying there in;

nu si sîn begunden nemen war

now they him began take heed

und in sô jæmerlîche var

and him so miserably colored

und sô getânen sâhen,

and so made saw,

7550 nu begunde ez in versmâhen,

now began it them vex,

daz er daz wunder kunde

that he the wonder could

mit handen und mit munde;

with hands and with mouth;

doch gruoztens in als einen man,
yet greeted-they him as a man,

der guoten gruoze verdienen kan,
who good greeting deserve can,

mit munde und ouch mit handen
with mouth and also with hands

7555

und bâten dô Tristanden,
and asked then Tristan,

daz er in seite mære,
that he them told tidings,

wie ez ime ergangen wære.
how it him gone were.

»diz sage ich iu,« sprach Tristan,
»this tell I you,« spoke Tristan,

»ich was ein höfscher spilman
»I was a courtly minstrel

7560

und kunde genuoge
and could enough

höfscheit unde fuoge:
courtliness and skill:

sprechen unde swîgen,
speak and be-silent,

lîren unde gîgen,
lyre and fiddle,

harphen unde rotten,
harp and rote,

7565

schimpfen unde spotten,
jest and mock,

daz kunde ich allez alsô wol,
that could I all so well,

als sô getân liut von rehte sol.
as such made people by right shall.

dâ mite gewan ich sô genuoc,
there with gained I so enough,

7570 biz mich daz guot übertruoc
until me the wealth overcame

und mêre haben wolte,
and more have would,

dan ich von rehte solte.
than I by right should.

sus liez ich mich an koufrât,
thus let I myself on trade,

daz mir den lîp verrâten hât.
that to-me the life betrayed has.

7575 ze gesellen ich gewan
as companion I gained

einen rîchen koufman
a rich merchant

und luode wir zwêne einen kiel
and loaded we two a keel

mit allem dem, als uns geviel
with all that, as us pleased

dâ heime ze Îspanje
there at-home in Spain

7580 und wolten ze Britanje.
and would to Britain.

alsus bestuond uns ûf dem mer
thus attacked us on the sea

in einem schiffe ein rouphe,
in a ship a robber-band,

die nâmen uns kleine unde grôz
they took us small and great

und sluogen mînen koufgenôz
and slew my trading-fellow

7585 und allez, daz dâ lebende was.
and all, that there living was.

daz aber ich eine genas
that however I alone survived

mit dirre wunden, die ich hân,
with this wound, which I have,

daz hât diu harphe getân,
that has the harp done,

an der ir iegelîcher sach,
in which of-them each-one saw,

als ich in selbe verjach,
as I to-them myself declared,

7590

ich wære ein art spilman.
I were a born minstrel.

sus gewan ich in mit noeten an
thus gained I them with difficulty from

diz selbe kleine schiffelîn
this same small little-boat

und sô vil spîse dar îin,
and so much food there in,

daz ich ir hân biz her geleet.
that I on-it have until now lived.

7595

sus bin ich eine sider geswebet
thus am I alone since drifted

mit marter und mit maneger klage
with torment and with much lament

wol vierzec naht und vierzec tage,
well forty nights and forty days,

swar mich die winde sluogen,
wherever me the winds struck,

die wilden ûnde truogen
the wild waves carried

7600

wîlent her und wîlent hin;
sometimes hither and sometimes thither;

und enkan niht wîzen, wâ ich bin,
and can not know, where I am,

und weiz noch minner, war ich sol.
and know still less, whither I shall.

- nu tuot ir hêrren alse wol,
now do you lords so well,
- 7605 daz iu lône unser trehtîn,
that to-you reward our Lord,
- und helfet mir, dâ liute sîn!«
and help me, where people be!«
- »geselle,« sprâchen aber die boten,
»companion,« spoke again the envoys,
- »dîner süezen stimme und dîner noten
»of-thy sweet voice and of-thy notes
- der soltu hie geniezen:
of-them shalt-thou here have-benefit:
- 7610 dune solt niht langer fliezen
thou shalt not longer float
- âne trôst und âne rât.
without comfort and without counsel.
- swaz sô dich her gefüeret hât,
whatever so thee hitber brought has,
- got oder wazzer oder wint,
God or water or wind,
- wir bringen dich, dâ liute sint.«
we bring thee, where people are.«
- 7615 diz tâtens ouch: si fuorten in
this did-they also: they led him
- mit schiffe mitalle hin
with ship altogether thither
- reht in die stat, als er si bat.
right into the city, as he them bade.
- sîn schif daz haftens an daz stat
his ship that fastened-they at the shore
- und sprâchen aber: »sich, spilman,
and spoke again: »see, minstrel,
- 7620 nim war, sich dise burc an
take heed, see this castle on

und dise schœne stat hie bî!

and this fair city here by!

weistu noch, waz stete ez sî?»

knowest-thou yet, what town it be?»

»nein, hêrre, ichn weiz niht, waz ez ist.«

»no, lord, I know not, what it is.«

»sô sage wir dir daz, daz du bist

»so tell we thee that, that thou art

ze Develîne in Îrlant.«

in Dublin in Ireland.«

7625

»des lobe ich den heilant,

»of-it praise I the Savior,

daz ich doch under liuten bin.

that I yet among people am.

wan eteswer ist under in,

for someone is among them,

der sîne güete an mir begât

who his kindness on me does

und tuot mir eteslîchen rât.«

and does me some counsel.«

7630

hie mite kêrten die boten hin

here with turned the envoys thither

unde begunden under in

and began among them

mit rede von sînen sachen

with speech of his affairs

vil michel wunder machen.

very great wonder make.

si seiten wider ze mære,

they told back as tidings,

7635

daz in widervaren wære

that them befallen were

âventiure an einem man,

adventure in a man,

dâ man sich es lützel an

where one oneself of-it little on

und niemer solte versehen.

and never should expect.

7640 si seiten, also ez was geschehen:

they told, as it was happened:

ê sî dar nâher kâmen,

before they thither nearer should-come,

daz si aldort her vernâmen

that they there hither should-bear

einen alsô süezen harphen klanc

a so sweet harp sound

und mit der harphen einen sanc,

and with the harp a song,

7645 got möhte in gerne hœren

God might it gladly hear

in sînen himelkœren;

in his heaven-choirs;

und jâhen, daz daz wære

and said, that that were

ein armer marterære,

a poor martyr,

ein tôtwunder spilman:

a death-wounded minstrel:

7650 »wol hin, ir seht ez ime wol an,

»well thither, you see it on-him well on,

er stirbet morgen oder noch;

he dies tomorrow or yet-today;

und in der marter hât er doch

and in the torment has he yet

einen muot sô lebelîchen,

a spirit so lively,

in allen künicrîchen

in all kingdoms

enfunde man ein herze niht, 7655
would-find one a heart not,

daz alsô grôzer ungeschicht
that of-so great misfortune

möhte genemen sô kleine war.«
could take so little heed.»

die burgære kêrten dar
the burghers turned thither

und triben maneger hande
and drove of-many kind

mære mit Tristande 7660
tidings with Tristan

und frâgeten in sus unde sô.
and asked him thus and so.

aber seite er iegelîchem dô
again told he to-each then

in der gelegenheite,
in the circumstance,

als er den boten ê seite.
as he to-the envoys before told.

sus bâtens in, er harphete in 7665
thus asked-they him, he should-harp for-them

und er kêrte allen sînen sin
and he turned all his mind

an ir gebot und an ir bete,
to their command and to their request,

wan erz von allem herzen tete;
for he-it from all heart did;

swâ mite er sich in kunde
wherever with he himself to-them could

mit handen oder mit munde 7670
with hands or with mouth

gelieben, daz was al sîn ger,
endear, that was all his desire,

des fleiz er sich und daz tet er.

of-it strove he himself and that did he.

und alse der arme spilman

and when the poor minstrel

wider sînes lîbes state began

against his body's state began

7675 sîn harphen und sîn singen

his harping and his singing

sô rehte suoze bringen,

so right sweetly bring,

ez begundes alle erbarmen:

it began-them all pity:

sus hiezen sî den armen

thus bade they the poor-man

ûz sînem schiffelîne tragen

out-of his little-boat carry

7680 und einem arzâte sagen,

and to-a physician tell,

daz er in ze hûse næme,

that he him to house should-take,

und swaz im rehte kæme,

and whatever to-him rightly should-come,

daz er des flîz hæte

that he of-it diligence had

und umbe ir guot im tæte

and for their wealth to-him should-do

7685 beidiu helfe unde gemach.

both help and comfort.

diz wart getân und diz geschach.

this was done and this happened.

und alse er in heim brâhte,

and when he him home brought,

al sîn gemach bedâhte,

all his comfort considered,

als er ez allerbeste

as he it very-best

von sînen listen weste,

from his arts knew,

dô half ez allez kleine.

then helped it all little.

diz mære wart gemeine

this tale became common

über al die stat ze Develîn.

over all the city of Dublin.

ein schar gieng ûz, diu ander in

one company went out, the other in

und klagetên sîn ungemach.

and lamented his discomfort.

7690

7695

The Queen's Promise

XII

A priest who is the queen's master, and teacher to her daughter Isolde, hears the dying minstrel and tells the queen of him. She has him brought and recognizes the poison; he gives his name as Tantris, and she promises to heal him herself. At her request he plays before her and the young Isolde, better than ever for the hope he now has, though the stench of the wound keeps everyone away. The queen offers him life and health in return for teaching her daughter, and he accepts gladly.

In der wîle ez dô geschach,

In the while it then happened,

daz ein pfaffe dar in kam

that a priest there in came

unde sîne fuoge vernam

and his skill perceived

an handen unde an munde;

in hands and in mouth;

- 7700 wan er ouch selbe kunde
for he also himself could
 liste unde kunst genuoge,
arts and skill enough,
 mit handen manege fuoge
with hands many-a skill
 an iegellichem seitspil
on every string-play
 und kunde ouch fremeder spräche vil.
and could also of-foreign speech much.
- 7705 an fuoge unde an höfscheit
on skill and on courtliness
 hete er gewendet unde geleit
had he turned and laid
 sîne tage und sîne sinne.
his days and his senses.
 der was der küniginne
he was to-the queen
 meister unde gesinde
master and household
- 7710 und hete sî von kinde
and had her from child
 gewitziget sêre
instructed sorely
 an maneger guoten lêre,
in many-a good teaching,
 mit manegem fremedem liste,
with many-a strange art,
 den si von im wiste.
which she from him knew.

ouch lêrte er ie genôte

also taught he ever closely

7715

ir tohter Îsôte

her daughter Isolde

die erwünscheten maget,

the wished-for maiden,

von der diu werlt elliu saget

of whom the world all tells

und von der disiu mære sint;

and of whom these tales are;

diu was ir einigez kint,

she was her only child,

7720

und hete al sîne flîzekeit

and had all his diligence

sît des tages an sî geleit,

since the day on her laid,

daz si iht gelernen kunde

what she at-all learn could

mit handen oder mit munde:

with hands or with mouth:

die hete er ouch in sîner pflege.

her had he also in his care.

7725

die lêrte er dô und alle wege

her taught he then and all ways

beidiu buoch und seitspil.

both books and string-play.

dô der an Tristande alsô vil

when he in Tristan so much

schœner kunst und fuoge ersach,

of-fair art and skill saw,

- 7730 in erbarmete sîn ungemach
him pitied his discomfort
 vil inneclîche sêre
very inwardly sorely
 und enbeite ouch dô nimêre,
and waited also then no-more,
 er gie zer küniginne dan
he went to-the queen thence
 und seite ir, daz ein spilman
and told her, that a minstrel
- 7735 in der stat dâ wære,
in the city there were,
 der wære ein marterære
who were a martyr
 und tôt mit lebendem lîbe,
and dead with living body,
 und daz nie man von wîbe
and that never man from woman
 sîner künste als ûz erkorn
of-his arts so out chosen
- 7740 noch baz gemuot würde geborn.
nor better minded should-be born.
 »â,« sprach er, »edeliu künigîn,
»ab,« spoke he, »noble queen,
 möhte ez iemer gesîn,
could it ever be,
 daz wir dar zuo gedæhten,
that we there to should-think,
 daz wir in etswar bræhten,
that we him somewhere should-bring,
- 7745 dar ir mit fuoge kæmet,
where you with fitness should-come,
 daz wunder vernæmet,
the wonder should-hear,

daz ein sterbender man

that a dying man

als inneclîche suoze kan

so inwardly sweetly can

geharphen unde gesingen

harp and sing

und doch an sînen dingen

and yet in his affairs

7750

weder rât noch helfe kan gewesen,

neither counsel nor help can be,

wan ern kan niemer genesen.

for he can never survive.

sîn meister und sîn arzât,

his master and his physician,

der sîn biz her gepflegen hât,

who him until now tended has,

der hât in ûz der pflege verlân,

he has him out-of the care let-go,

7755

ern mag im niht ze staten gestân

he may him not to aid stand

mit keiner slahte sinne.«

with no kind sense.»

»sich,« sprach diu küniginne,

»see,« spoke the queen,

»ich sol den kameræren sagen,

»I shall to-the chamberlains say,

müge er ez iemer vertragen

(if)-may he it ever bear

7760

und verdoln, daz man in handele

and endure, that one him handle

und under handen wandle,

and under hands move,

daz si in uns her ûf bringen,

that they him to-us hither up bring,

ob ime ze sînen dingen

whether him for his affairs

7765 dekeiner slahte helfe tûge

any kind help avail

oder obe in iht generen müge.«

or whether him anything save may.«

Diz wart getân und diz geschach.

This was done and this happened.

nu daz diu künigîn gesach

now that the queen saw

sîn angest al begarwe,

his distress all entirely,

7770 die wunden unde ir varwe,

the wounds and their color,

nu erkande sîz gelüppe dâ.

now recognized she-it poison there.

»ach, armer spilman,« sprach si sâ,

»ah, poor minstrel,« spoke she at-once,

»dû bist mit gelüppe wunt.«

»thou art with poison wounded.«

»ine weiz,« sprach Tristan sâ zestunt.

»I-not know,« spoke Tristan straightway at-once.

7775 »ine kan niht wizzen, waz ez ist,

»I can not know, what it is,

wan mir enmac kein arzâtlist

for me may no physician's-art

gehelfen noch gefrumen hie zuo:

help nor avail here to:

nune weiz ich mêre, waz ich tuo,

now-not know I more, what I do,

wan daz ich mich gote muoz ergeben

except that I myself to-God must give

7780 und leben, die wîle ich mac geleben.

and live, the while I may live.

swer aber genâde an mir begê,
whoever however mercy on me do,

sît ez mir kumberlîche stê,
since it to-me distressfully stand,

dem lône got! mirst helfe nôt,
him reward God! to-me-is help need,

ich bin mit lebendem lîbe tât.«
I am with living body dead.»

Diu wîse sprach im aber zuo:
The wise spoke to-him again to:

7785

»spilman, sag an, wie heizestuo?«
»minstrel, say on, what art-thou-called?»

»frouwe, ich heize Tantris.«
»lady, I am-called Tantris.»

»Tantris, nu wis an mir gewis,
»Tantris, now be of me certain,

daz ich dich binamen neren sol:
that I thee truly save shall:

wis gemuot und gehabe dich wol!
be spirited and bear thyself well!

7790

ich wil dîn arzât selbe sîn.«
I will thy physician myself be.»

»genâde, süeziu künigîn,
»thanks, sweet queen,

diu zunge diu gruone iemer,
the tongue it flourish ever,

daz herze ersterbe niemer,
the heart die never,

diu wîsheit diu müeze iemer leben,
the wisdom it may ever live,

7795

den helfelôsen helfe geben,
to-the helpless help give,

dîn name der müeze werden

thy name it may become

gewirdet ûf der erden!«

honored on the earth!«

»Tantris,« sprach aber diu künigîn,

»Tantris,« spoke again the queen,

7800 »möhte ez an dînen staten sîn,

»could it in thy means be,

wan daz du abr also unkrefte bist,

except that thou however so weak art,

als ez kein wunder an dir ist,

as it no wonder in thee is,

sô hôte ich gerne harphenspil:

so would-hear I gladly harp-play:

des kanstu, høre ich sagen, vil.«

of-it canst-thou, hear I say, much.«

7805 »nein, frouwe, sprechet alsô niht:

»no, lady, speak so not:

mich enirret kein mîn ungeschiht,

me hinders no my misfortune,

ine tuo und müge ez harte wol,

unless-I do and may it very well,

daz iuwer dienst wesen sol.«

what your service be shall.«

sus wart sîn harphe dar besant.

thus was his harp thither sent.

7810 ouch besande man zehant

also summoned one at-once

die jungen küniginne.

the young queen.

daz wære insigel der minne,

the true seal of-the love,

mit dem sîn herze sider wart

with which his heart since was

versigelt unde vor verspart

sealed and before shut

aller der werlt gemeiner

to-all the world common

7815

niuwan ir al einer,

except to-her all alone,

diu schœne Îsôt si kam ouch dar

the fair Isolde she came also thither

und nam vil flîzeclîche war,

and took very diligently heed,

dâ Tristan harphende saz.

where Tristan harping sat.

nu harphete er ouch michel baz,

now harped he also much better,

7820

dan er ie dâ vor getete:

than he ever there before did:

wan er gedingen hete,

for he hope had,

sîn ungelücke wære hin.

his misfortune were gone.

dâ sang er unde harphete in

there sang he and harped for-them

niht alse ein lebelôser man,

not as a lifeless man,

7825

er vieng ez lebelîchen an

he began it lively on

und alse der wol gemuote tuot.

and as the well spirited does.

er machte ez in sô rehte guot

he made it for-them so right good

mit handen und mit munde,

with hands and with mouth,

- 7830 daz er in der kurzen stunde
that he in the short hour
 ir aller hulde alsô gevienc,
of-them all favor so caught,
 daz ez im ze allem guote ergienc.
that it him to all good went.
 und al des spils, des er getete,
and all the play, which he did,
 beidiu anderswâ und an der stete,
both elsewhere and at the place,
 7835 sô smacte ie der veige slac
so stank ever the fatal blow
 und machete einen solhen smac,
and made a such stench,
 daz nieman keine stunde
that no-one any hour
 bî ime belîben kunde.
by him remain could.

Aber sprach diu küniginne dô:

Again spoke the queen then:

- 7840 »Tantris, swenne ez gefüege alsô,
»Tantris, when it befitt so,
 daz dir dîn ding alsô gestê,
that to-thee thy affair so stand,
 daz dirre smac an dir zergê
that this stench on thee pass-away
 und ieman bî dir müge genesen,
and anyone by thee may survive,
 sô lâ dir wol bevolhen wesen
so let to-thee well commended be
 7845 die jungen maget Îsôte,
the young maiden Isolde,

diu lernet ie genôte

she learned ever closely

diu buoch und dar zuo seitspil,

the books and there to string-play,

und kan des ouch billîche vil

and can of-it also fittingly much

nâch den tagen und nâch der frist,

after the days and after the time,

als sî derbî gewesen ist.

as she thereby been has.

7850

und kanstu keiner lêre

and (if)-canst-thou any teaching

und keiner fuoge mêre

and any skill more

danne ir meister oder ich,

than her master or I,

des underwîse sî durch mich.

of-that instruct her for me.

dar umbe wil ich dir dîn leben

there about will I thee thy life

7855

und dînen lîp ze miete geben

and thy body as reward give

wol gesunt und wol getân:

well healthy and well made:

diu mag ich geben unde lân,

them may I give and leave,

diu beidiu sint in mîner hant.«

they both are in my hand.«

»jâ, ist ez danne alsô gewant,«

»yes, (if)-is it then so turned,«

7860

sprach aber der sieche spilman,

spoke again the sick minstrel,

»daz ich sô wider komen kan

»that I so back come can

und mit spile genesen sol,

and with play survive shall,

ob got wil, sô genise ich wol.

if God will, so survive I well.

7865 sæligiu küniginne,

blessed queen,

sît daz iuwer sinne

since that your minds

alsô stânt, als ir dâ saget,

so stand, as you there say,

umbe iuwer tohter die maget,

about your daughter the maiden,

sô trûwe ich harte wol genesen.

so trust I very well survive.

7870 ich hân der buoche gelesen

I have of-the books read

in der mâze und alse vil,

in the measure and so much,

daz ich mir wol getrûwen wil,

that I myself well trust will,

ich gediene iu wol ze danke an ir.

I serve you well to thanks in her.

dâ zuo sô weiz ich wol an mir,

there to so know I well in me,

7875 daz mîner jâre kein man

that of-my years no man

sô manic edel seitspil kan;

so many-a noble string-play can;

swaz ir dar über geruochet

whatever you there over deign

und her ze mir gesuochet,

and hither to me seek,

daz ist allez getân,

that is all done,

als verre als ich es state hân.«

as far as I it means have.«

7880

Isolde's Tutor

XIII

Tristan's foresight in hiding his wound from the Irish after the combat now saves him. The queen, who would have killed him had she known him, within twenty days so far relieves him that no one shuns him for the wound. Then Isolde comes daily to his teaching and chooses the best of his arts. Already skilled in languages, fiddle, lyre, harp, and song, she learns above all morality, which teaches fair manners and how to please both God and the world.

Sus beschiet man im ein kamerlîn

Thus assigned one him a little-chamber

und schuof im alle tage dar î n

and provided him all days there in

alle die pflege und daz gemach,

all the care and the comfort,

daz er selbe vor gesprach.

which he himself before spoke.

alrêrste was diu wîsheit

first-of-all was the wisdom

ze frumen und ze staten geleit,

to profit and to aid laid,

die er in dem schiffe begienc,

which he in the ship did,

7885

dô er den schilt zer sîten hienc

when he the shield at-the side hung

und barc sîne wunden

and hid his wounds

7890 vor den unkunden,

before the strangers,

vor der îrlandeschen diet,

before the Irish folk,

dô sî von Kurnewâle schiet.

when it from Cornwall parted.

hie von sô was in unkunt

here from so was to-them unknown

und enwisten niht, daz er was wunt.

and knew not, that he was wounded.

7895 wan hæstens iht bevunden

for bad-they anything found

umbe keine sîne wunden,

about any his wounds,

sô wol als in daz was erkant,

so well as to-them that was known,

wie ez umbe die wunden was gewant,

how it about the wounds was turned,

die Môrolt mit dem swerte sluoc,

which Morold with the sword struck,

7900 daz er in allen nœten truoc,

that he in all needs bore,

ez enwære Tristande nie

it would-be to-Tristan never

ergangen, alse ez ime ergie.

gone, as it to-him went.

nu half aber im, daz er genas,

now helped however him, that he survived,

daz er sô vorbedæhtic was.

that he so foresighted was.

hie mag ein man erkennen an

here may a man recognize on

und wizzen wol, wie dicke ein man

and know well, how often a man

guote vorbedæhte

good foresight

ze guotem ende bræhte,

to good end should-bring,

der gerne sinnebære

who gladly sensible

und vorbesihtic wære.

and foreseeing were.

Diu wîse küniginne

The wise queen

diu kêrte alle ir sinne

she turned all her senses

und alle ir witze dar an,

and all her wits there on,

wie sî generte einen man,

how she saved a man,

umbe des lîp und umbe des leben

for whose body and for whose life

si gerne hæte gegeben

she gladly would-have given

ir lîp und alle ir êre.

her body and all her honor.

si hazzete in noch mêre

she hated him still more

dan sî sich selben minnete;

than she herself self loved;

und swes si sich versinnete,

and whatever she herself bethought,

7905

7910

7915

7920

daz ime ze senfte und ze fromen

that to-him to ease and to benefit

und ze heile möhte komen,

and to healing might come,

dâ was si spâte unde fruoz

there was she late and early

betrehtic unde gescheffic zuo.

attentive and busy thereto.

7925 daz enwas kein wunderlîch geschiht:

that was no wondrous event:

sîne erkande ir vîndes niht;

she knew of-her enemy not;

und möhte sî daz wîzen,

and could she that know,

an wen si was verflîzen

on whom she was devoted

und wem si half ûz tôdes nôt,

and whom she helped out-of death's distress,

7930 wære iht ergers danne der tôz,

were anything worse than the death,

den hâtes im zewâre gegeben

that would-have-she him truly given

vil mîchel gerner dan daz leben.

very much more-gladly than the life.

nu enwistes aber dâ niht wan guot,

now knew-she however there nothing but good,

und truog im niuwan guoten muot.

and bore him only good spirit.

7935 Ob ich iu nû vil seite

If I you now much told

und lange rede vûr leite

and long speech before laid

von mîner frouwen meisterschaft,

of my lady's mastery,

wie wunderlîche guote kraft

what wondrous good power

ir erzenîe hæte

her medicine bad

und wies ir siechen tæte,

and how-it to-her sick-man should-do,

7940

waz hulfe ez und waz solte daz?

what helped it and what should that?

in edelen ôren lûtet baz

in noble ears sounds better

ein wort, daz schône gezimt,

a word, that beautifully befits,

dan daz man ûz der bûhsen nimt.

than what one out-of the box takes.

als verre als ichs bedenken kan,

as far as I-it consider can,

7945

sô sol ich mich bewarn dar an,

so shall I myself guard there on,

daz ich iu iemer wort gesage,

that I you ever word say,

daz iuwern ôren missehage

that to-your ears displease

und iuwerm herzen widerstê.

and to-your heart be-repugnant.

ich spriche ouch deste minner ê

I speak also the less before

7950

von iegelîcher sache,

of each-one matter,

ê ich iu daz mære mache

before I you the tale make

unlîdic unde unsenfte bî

unbearable and unpleasant by

mit rede, diu niht des hoves sî.

with speech, which not of-the court be.

- 7955 umbe mîner frouwen arzâtlist
about my lady's physician's-art
 und umbe ir siechen genist
and about her sick-man's healing
 wil ich iu kurzliche sagen:
will I you briefly tell:
 si half im inner zweinzec tagen,
she helped him within twenty days,
 daz man in allenthalben leit
that one him everywhere suffered
- 7960 und nieman durch die wunden meit,
and no-one for the wound avoided,
 der anders bî im wolte sîn.
who otherwise by him would be.
 Sît gie diu junge künigîn
Later went the young queen
 alle zît ze sîner lêre:
all time to his teaching:
 an die sô leite er sêre
on her so laid he sorely
- 7965 sînen flîz und sîne stunde;
his diligence and his hour;
 daz beste, daz er kunde,
the best, that he could,
 sô schuollist, sô hantspil,
both school-art, and hand-play,
 daz ich niht sunder zalen wil,
that I not separately count will,
 daz leite er ir besunder vür,
that laid he her apart before,
- 7970 daz si nâch ir selber kür
that she after her own choice
 ze lêre dar ûz næme,
to teaching there out should-take,

swes sô sî gezæme.

whatever so her should-befit.

Îsôt diu schœne tete alsô:

Isolde the fair did so:

daz allerbeste, daz si dô

the very-best, that she then

under allen sînen listen vant,

among all his arts found,

7975

des underwant si sich zehant

of-it undertook she herself at-once

und was ouch flîzec dar an,

and was also diligent there on,

swes si in der werlde began.

whatever she in the world began.

ouch half si harte sêre

also helped her very sorely

diu vordere lêre.

the former teaching.

7980

si kunde ê schœne fuoge

she could before fair skill

und höfscheit genuoge

and courtliness enough

mit handen und mit munde.

with hands and with mouth.

diu schœne si kunde

the fair she could

ir sprâche dâ von Develîn,

her language there of Dublin,

7985

si kunde franzois und latîn,

she could French and Latin,

videlen wol ze prîse

fiddle well to prize

in welhischer wîse.

in Welsh manner.

ir vingere die kunden,
her fingers they could,

7990 swenne sîs begunden,
whenever they-it began,

die lîren wol gerüeren
the lyre well touch

und ûf der harphen fûeren
and on the harp lead

die dœne mit gewalte:
the tunes with power:

si steigete unde valte
she raised and lowered

7995 die noten behendeclîche.
the notes deftly.

ouch sanc diu sældenrîche
also sang the blessed-one

suoze unde wol von munde;
sweetly and well from mouth;

und swaz si fuoge kunde,
and whatever she skill could,

dâ kam si dô ze frumen an
there came her then to profit on

8000 ir meister der spilman:
her master the minstrel:

der bezzerte si sêre.
he bettered her sorely.

under aller dirre lêre
among all this teaching

gab er ir eine unmüezekeit,
gave he her an occupation,

die heizen wir morâliteit.
which call we morality.

8005 diu kunst diu lêret schoene site:
the art it teaches fair manners:

dâ solten alle frouwen mite

there should all ladies with

in ir jugent unmüezic wesen.

in their youth occupied be.

morâliteit daz süeze lesen

morality the sweet reading

deist sælic unde reine.

that-is blessed and pure.

ir lêre hât gemeine

her teaching has common

8010

mit der werlde und mit gote.

with the world and with God.

si lêret uns in ir gebote

she teaches us in her commands

got und der werlde gefallen;

God and the world please;

si ist edeln herzen allen

she is to-noble hearts all

ze einer ammen gegeben,

as a nurse given,

8015

daz sî ir lîpnar unde ir leben

that they their nourishment and their life

suochen in ir lêre,

seek in her teaching,

wan sîne hânt guot noch êre,

for they-not have wealth nor honor,

ez enlêre sî morâliteit.

it unless-teach them morality.

diz was ir meiste unmüezikeit

this was her greatest occupation

8020

der jungen küniginne.

of-the young queen.

hie banketes ir sinne

here feasted-it her senses

und ir gedanke dicke mite.

and her thoughts often with.

hie von sô wart si wol gesite,

here from so became she well mannered,

8025 schône unde reine gemuot,

fair and purely minded,

ir gebærde süeze unde guot.

her bearing sweet and good.

Isolde the Siren

XIV

In half a year Isolde becomes the land's pride, singing French songs at court. The poet likens her to the Sirens, who draw ships like the lodestone: her open song enters hearts through the ears, and her beauty, a secret song, enters through the eyes and binds men's thoughts with yearning. Tristan, healed and fearing discovery, asks leave, pleading a wife at home; the queen refuses for a year, then relents, and she and Isolde give him two marks of gold. He sails home by way of England.

Sus kam diu süeze junge

Thus came the sweet young-one

ze solher bezzerunge

to such improvement

an lêre und an gebære

in teaching and in bearing

8030 in dem halben jâre,

in the half year,

daz von ir sælekeite

that of her blessedness

allez daz lant seite

all the land spoke

unde ir vater der künec dâ van

and her father the king there of

vil grôze fröude gewan;

very great joy gained;

ir muoter wart es sêre frô.

her mother became of-it sorely glad.

8035

nu gevuogete ez sich dicke alsô,

now happened it itself often so,

ir vater sô der was fröudehaft

her father when he was joyful

oder als fremediu ritterschaft

or when foreign knighthood

dâ ze hove vor dem künege was,

there at court before the king was,

daz Îsôt in den palas

that Isolde into the palace

8040

vür ir vater wart besant;

before her father was summoned;

und allez daz ir was bekant

and all that to-her was known

höfscher liste und schœner site,

of-courtly arts and fair manners,

da kurztes im die stunde mite

there shortened-she him the hour with

und mit im manegem an der stete.

and with him many-a-one at the place.

8045

swaz fröude sî dem vater getete,

whatever joy she to-the father did,

daz fröutes alle gelîche:

that gladdened-them all alike:

arme unde rîche

poor and rich

si heten an ir beide

they had in her both

8050 eine sælege ougenweide,

a blessed eye's-pasture,

der ôren und des herzen lust:

of-the ears and of-the heart delight:

ûzen und innerhalp der brust

outside and inside the breast

dâ was ir lust gemeine.

there was their delight common.

diu süeze Îsôt, diu reine,

the sweet Isolde, the pure,

8055 si sanc, si schreip und si las;

she sang, she wrote and she read;

und swaz ir aller fröude was,

and whatever of-them all joy was,

daz was ir banekîe.

that was her pastime.

si videlte ir stampenîe,

she fiddled her estampies,

leiche und sô fremediu notelîn,

lays and so foreign little-notes,

8060 diu niemer fremeder kunden sîn,

which never stranger could be,

in franzoiser wîse

in French manner

von Sanze und San Dinîse:

of Sens and Saint Denis:

der kundes ûzer mâze vil.

of-them could-she beyond measure much.

ir lîren unde ir harphenspil

her lyre and her harp-play

sluoc sî ze beiden wenden

struck she on both sides

8065

mit harmblanken henden

with ermine-white hands

ze lobelîchem prîse.

to praiseworthy prize.

in Lût noch in Thamîse

in Lud nor in Thames

gesluogen frouwen hende nie

struck women's hands never

seiten süezer danne hie.

strings more-sweetly than here.

8070

la dûze Îsôt, la bête.

la douce Iseut, la belle.

si sang ir pasturêl,

she sang her pastourelle,

ir rotruwange und ir rundate,

her rotouenge and her rondeau,

schanzûne, reffloit und folate

chansons, refrains and follies

wol unde wol und alze wol;

well and well and all-too well;

8075

wan von ir wart manc herze vol

for by her became many-a heart full

mit senelîcher trahte.

with yearning thought.

von ir wart maneger slahte

by her was of-many kind

gedanke und ahte vür brâht.

thought and reflection forth brought.

durch sî wart wunder gedâht,

for her was wonder thought,

8080

als ir wol wizzet, daz geschiht,
as you well know, that happens,

dâ man ein solich wunder siht
where one a such wonder sees

von schœne und von höfscheit,
of beauty and of courtliness,

als an Îsôte was geleit.
as in Isolde was laid.

8085 Wem mag ich sî gelichen
Whom may I her liken

die schœnen, sældenrichen,
the fair, blessed,

wan den Syrenen eine,
but to-the Sirens alone,

die mit dem agesteine
who with the lodestone

die kiele ziehent ze sich?
the keels draw to themselves?

8090 als zôch Îsôt, sô dunket mich,
so drew Isolde, so seems to-me,

vil herzen und gedanken in,
many hearts and thoughts in,

die doch vil sicher wânden sîn
who yet very secure thought be

von senedem ungemache.
from yearning discomfort.

ouch sint die zwô sache
also are the two things

8095 kiel âne anker unde muot
keel without anchor and spirit

ze ebenmâzene guot.
to comparison good.

si sint sô selten beide

they are so seldom both

an stäter wegeweide,

on steady road,

sô dicke in ungewisser habe,

so often in uncertain harbor,

wankende beidiu an und abe

wavering both on and off

8100

ündende hin unde her.

billowing thither and hither.

sus swebet diu wîselôse ger,

thus drifts the guideless desire,

der ungewisse minnen muot,

the uncertain love's spirit,

rehte als daz schif ân anker tuot

right as the ship without anchor does

in ebengelîcher wîse.

in even-like manner.

8105

diu gefüege Îsôt, diu wîse,

the seemly Isolde, the wise,

diu junge süeze künigîn

the young sweet queen

alsô zôch sî gedanken in

so drew she thoughts in

ûz maneges herzen arken,

out-of many-a heart's ark,

als der agestein die barken

as the lodestone the barks

8110

mit der Syrenen sange tuot.

with the Sirens' song does.

si sang in maneges herzen muot
she sang into many-a heart's spirit

offenlîchen unde tougen
openly and secretly

durch ôren und durch ougen.
through ears and through eyes.

8115 ir sanc, dens offenlîche tete
her song, which-she openly did

beidiu anderswâ und an der stete,
both elsewhere and at the place,

daz was ir sûezez singen,
that was her sweet singing,

ir senftez seiten klingen,
her soft strings' sounding,

daz lûte und offenlîche
that loudly and openly

8120 durch der ôren künicrîche
through the ears' kingdom

hin nider in diu herze klanc.
thither down into the hearts rang.

sô was der tougenlîche sanc,
so was the secret song,

ir wunderlîchiu schœne,
her wondrous beauty,

die mit ir muotgedœne
which with its mind-music

8125 verholne unde tougen
bidden and secretly

durch die venster der ougen
through the windows of-the eyes

in vil manc edele herze sleich
into very many-a noble heart crept

und daz zouber dar î̃n streich,
and the magic there in smeared,

daz die gedanke zehant

that the thoughts at-once

vienc unde vâhende bant

caught and catching bound

mit sene und mit seneder nôt.

with yearning and with yearning distress.

Sus hete sich diu schœne Îsôt

Thus had herself the fair Isolde

von Tristandes lêre

by Tristan's teaching

gebezzeret sêre.

bettered sorely.

sî was suoze gemuot,

she was sweetly minded,

ir site und ir gebærde guot.

her manners and her bearing good.

si kunde schœniu hantspil,

she could fair hand-plays,

schœner behendekeite vil:

of-fair dexterities much:

brieve und schanzûne tihten,

letters and chansons compose,

ir getihte schœne slihten,

her compositions fairly smooth,

si kunde schrîben unde lesen.

she could write and read.

nu was ouch Tristan genesen

now was also Tristan healed

ganz unde geheilet garwe,

whole and cured entirely,

daz ime lîch unde varwe

that him body and color

wider lûteren begunde.

again clear began.

8130

8135

8140

8145

nu vorhte er alle stunde,

now feared he all hours,

daz in etswer erkande

that him someone recognized

von gesinde oder von lande

of household or of land

und was in stæter trahte,

and was in constant thought,

8150 wie mit gefüeger ahte

how with seemly manner

er urloup genæme

he leave should-take

und ûz den sorgen kæme;

and out-of the cares should-come;

wan er wol wiste, möhte ez sîn,

for he well knew, could it be,

im solte ieweder künigîn

him should each queen

8155 kûme oder niemer urloup geben.

barely or never leave give.

nu bedâhte er aber, daz sîn leben

now considered he however, that his life

ze allen zîten was geleit

at all times was laid

in michel ungewisheit.

in great uncertainty.

er gie zer küniginne

he went to-the queen

8160 und begunde in schœnem sinne

and began in fair sense

sîne rede besetzen an der stete,

his speech set at the place,

als er an allen steten tete;

as he at all places did;

er kniete vür si unde sprach:

he knelt before her and spoke:

»frouwe, genâde unde gemach

»lady, mercy and comfort

und helfe, die ir mir habet getân,

and help, which you me have done,

die lâze iu got ze staten gestân

them let you God to aid stand

in dem êwigen rîche!

in the eternal realm!

ir habet sô sælicliche

you have so blessedly

mit mir geworben und sô wol,

with me acted and so well,

daz ez iu got iemer lônên sol,

that it you God ever reward shall,

und ich ez iemer dienen wil

and I it ever serve will

unz an mînes tôdes zil,

until to my death's goal,

an swelher stat ich armer man

at whatever place I poor man

iuwer lop gefürdern kan.

your praise further can.

sæligiu künigîn,

blessed queen,

ez sol mit iuvern hulden sîn,

it shall with your favors be,

daz ich wider ze lande var,

that I back to land fare,

wan mîn dinc stât alsô dar,

for my affair stands so there,

daz ich langer niht belîben kan.«

that I longer not remain can.«

8165

8170

8175

- 8180 diu frouwe lachete in an.
the lady laughed him at.
- »dîn smeichen,« sprach si, »deist ein wiht,
»thy flattering,« spoke she, »that-is a naught,
- ich engibe dir urloubes niht,
I give thee leave not,
- dune kumest niht hinnen zwâre
thou comest not hence truly
- vor disem ganzen jâre.«
before this whole year.«
- 8185 »nein, edeliu küniginne,
»no, noble queen,
- nemet in iuwer sinne,
take into your minds,
- wie ez umbe die gotes ê
how it about the God's law
- und umbe herzeliebe stê.
and about heart's-love stand.
- ich hân dâ heime ein êlich wîp,
I have there at-home a wedded wife,
- 8190 die minne ich als mîn selbes lîp,
her love I as my own body,
- und weiz wol, daz sich diu versiht
and know well, that herself she expects
- und enhât ouch zwîvel dar an niht,
and has also doubt there on not,
- ich ensî binamen tôr;
I unless-be truly dead;
- und ist mîn angest und mîn nôr,
and is my fear and my distress,
- 8195 wirt si einem anderen gegeben,
(if)-becomes she to-an other given,

sô ist mîn trôst und mîn leben

so is my comfort and my life

und al diu fröude dâ hin,

and all the joy there gone,

ze der ich dingende bin,

to which I hoping am,

und enwirde niemer mêre frô.«

and become never more glad.«

»entriuwen,« sprach diu wîse dô,

»in-truth,« spoke the wise then,

»Tantris, diu nôt ist êhaft.

»Tantris, the need is lawful.

alsus getâne geselleschaft

so made companionship

sol nieman guoter scheiden.

shall no-one good part.

got der genâde iu beiden

God he have-mercy you both

dînem wîbe unde dir!

to-thy wife and to-thee!

swie rehte ungerne ich dîn enbir,

however right unwillingly I thee forgo,

sô wil ich dîn durch got enbern.

so will I thee for God forgo.

urloubes muoz ich dich gewern

of-leave must I thee grant

und bin dir willic unde holt.

and am to-thee willing and kind.

8200

8205

- 8210 ich und mîn tohter Îsolt
I and my daughter Isolde
 wir geben dir ze dîner var
we give thee for thy journey
 und ze dîner lîpnar
and for thy nourishment
 zwô marc von rôtem golde:
two marks of red gold:
 die habe dir von Îsolde.«
those have thee from Isolde.»
- 8215 sus vielt der ellende
thus folded the exile
 ietwedere sîne hende
each his hands
 des lîbes unde der sinne,
of-the body and of-the senses,
 ietwedere küniginne
each queen
 beidiu der muoter unde der maget:
both the mother and the maiden:
- 8220 »iu beiden,« sprach er, »sî gesaget
»to-you both,« spoke he, »be said
 von gote genâde und êre!«
from God mercy and honor!«
 und enbeite ouch dô niht mêre,
and waited also then not more,
 er fuor von dannen zEngelant,
he went from thence to-England,
 von Engelande al zehant
from England all at-once
- 8225 ze Kurnewâle wider heim.
to Cornwall back home.

The Return to Cornwall

XV

Cornwall welcomes Tristan back and laughs over his healing by his enemy. Asked about Isolde, he praises her above Helen: the sun now rises in Ireland, not Mycenae, and her beauty adorns all women. Then envy rises among the lords, who say he is a sorcerer and press Mark to marry and get an heir. Mark refuses: Tristan is his heir. As the lords' hatred grows, Tristan fears for his life and begs Mark to grant the lords their wish; Mark answers that envy follows worth, and Tristan asks leave to go.

Nu Marke sîn œheim

Now Mark his uncle

und daz lantliut vernam,

and the land-folk heard,

daz er gesunder wider kam,

that he healthy back came,

si wurden al gelîche

they became all alike

von allem dem rîche

from all the realm

8230

rehte unde ûz allem herzen frô.

rightly and out-of all heart glad.

der kûnec, sîn friunt, der frâgte in dô,

the king, his friend, he asked him then,

wie ez ime ergangen wære.

how it him gone were.

und er seite ime daz mære

and he told him the tale

von obene hin ze grunde,

from above thither to ground,

8235

so er ebeneste kunde.

as he most-evenly could.

des nam si alle wunder

of-it took them all wonder

und begunden hier under

and began here under

vil schimpfen unde lachen

much jest and laugh

8240 und michel lahter machen

and great laughter make

von sîner verte in Îrlant,

of his journey to Ireland,

von sîner vîendinne hant,

of his she-enemy's hand,

wie schône in die generte;

how beautifully him she healed;

von allem dem geverte,

of all the conduct,

8245 daz er under in begie.

which he among them did.

si jâhen, sine gefrieschen nie

they said, they heard never

solhes wonders gemach.

of-such wonder comfort.

Nû diz allez geschach,

Now this all happened,

daz sîn genist und sîn vart

that his healing and his journey

8250 sêre unde wol belachet wart,

sorely and well laughed-at was,

dô frâgtens in genôte

then asked-they him closely

von der maget Îsôte.

about the maiden Isolde.

»Îsôt,« sprach er, »daz ist ein maget,

»Isolde,« spoke he, »that is a maiden,

daz al diu werlt von schœne saget,
what all the world of beauty speaks,

deist allez hie wider also ein wint.
that-is all here against as a wind.

8255

diu liehte Îsôt, daz ist ein kint
the bright Isolde, that is a child

von gebærdē und von lîbe,
of bearing and of body,

daz kint noch maget von wîbe
that child nor maiden from woman

als lustic unde als ûz erkorn
so delightful and so out chosen

nie wart noch niemer wirt geborn.
never was nor never is born.

8260

diu lûtere, diu liehte Îsolt,
the clear, the bright Isolde,

diu ist lûter also arâbesch golt.
she is clear as Arabian gold.

des ich ie wænende was,
of-which I ever supposing was,

als ich ez an den buochen las,
as I it in the books read,

diu von ir lobe geschriben sint,
which of her praise written are,

8265

Aurôren tohter und ir kint,
Aurora's daughter and her child,

Tintarides diu mære,
Tyndaris the famous,

daz an ir eine wære
that in her alone were

aller wîbe schônheit
of-all women beauty

an einen bluomen geleit:
on one flower laid:

8270

von dem wâne bin ich komen;

from that belief am I come;

Îsôt hât mir den wân benomen.

Isolde has me the belief taken.

ine geloube niemer mê,

I believe never more,

daz sunne von Myzene gê;

that sun from Mycenae go;

8275 ganzlîchiu schœne ertagete nie

entire beauty dawned never

ze Kriechenlant, si taget hie.

in Greece, it dawns here.

alle gedanke und alle man

all thoughts and all men

die kaphen niuwan Îrlant an:

they gape only Ireland at:

dâ nemen ir ougen wunne,

there take their eyes bliss,

8280 sehen, wie diu niuwe sunne

see, how the new sun

nâch ir morgenrôte,

after her morning-red,

Îsôt nâch Îsôte,

Isolde after Isolde,

dâ her von Develîne

there hither from Dublin

in elliu herze schîne!

into all hearts shine!

8285 diu liehte wunneclîche

the bright blissful-one

si erliuhtet elliu rîche.

she lights-up all realms.

daz si alle lobes von wîben sagent,

what they all of-praise of women say,

swaz sî mit lobe ze mæren tragent,
whatever they with praise to tales carry,

deist allez hie wider ein niht.
that-is all here against a naught.

der Îsôte under ougen siht,
who Isolde under eyes looks,

8290

dem lûtertz herze unde muot,
to-him purifies-it heart and spirit,

rehte als diu gluot dem golde tuot:
right as the glow to-the gold does:

ez liebet leben unde lîp.
it endears life and body.

mit ir enist kein ander wîp
with her is no other woman

erleschet noch geswachet,
extinguished nor weakened,

8295

als maneger mære machet:
as many-a-one tales makes:

ir schœne diu schœnet,
her beauty it beautifies,

si zieret unde kroenet
she adorns and crowns

wîp unde wîplîchen namen.
woman and womanly name.

des ensol sich ir dekeiniu schamen.«
of-it shall itself of-them none be-ashamed.»

8300

Nu Tristan hete gesaget
Now Tristan had told

von sîner frouwen der maget,
of his lady the maiden,

der wunneclîchen von Îrlant,
the blissful-one from Ireland,

dar nâch als ez im was erkant,
there after as it to-him was known,

8305 swer dô dâ bi dem mære was
whoever then there by the tale was
 und ez rehte in sîn herze las,
and it rightly in his heart read,
 dem suozte diu rede den muot,
to-him sweetened the speech the spirit,
 rehte alse des meien tou die bluot:
right as the May's dew the blossom:
 si heten alle muot dâ van.
they had all spirit there of.

8310 der wol gemuote Tristan
the well spirited Tristan
 der greif dô wider an sîn leben.
he reached then again at his life.
 im was ein ander leben gegeben.
to-him was an other life given.
 er was ein niuborner man.
he was a new-born man.
 ez huop sich êrste umbe in an,
it arose itself first around him on,

8315 er was dô geil unde frô.
he was then merry and glad.
 künec unde hof, die wâren dô
king and court, they were then
 ze sînem willen bereit,
to his will ready,
 biz sich diu veige unzmüezekeit,
until itself the fatal occupation,
 der verwâzene nît,
the accursed envy,

8320 der selten iemer gelît,
which seldom ever lies-still,
 under in begunde üeben,
among them began exercise,

der hêren vil betrûeben

of-the lords many sadden

an ir muote und an ir siten,

in their spirit and in their manners,

daz si in der êren beniten

that they him of-the honors begrudged

unde der werdekeite,

and of-the worth,

8325

die der hof an in leite

which the court on him laid

und al daz lantgesinde.

and all the land-household.

si begunden vil swinde

they began very swiftly

reden ze sînen dingen

speak about his affairs

und in ze mære bringen,

and him to tale bring,

8330

er wære ein zouberære.

he were a sorcerer.

diu vorderen mære,

the former tales,

wie er ir vînt Môrolden sluoc,

how he their enemy Morold slew,

wie sich sîn dinc zÎrlanden truoc,

how itself his affair in-Ireland bore,

des begundens under in dô jehen,

of-it began-they among them then say,

8335

ez wære ûz zoubere geschehen.

it were out-of sorcery happened.

»seht,« sprâchens alle, »merket hie,

»see,« spoke-they all, »mark here,

und sprechet, wie genas er ie
and speak, how survived he ever

vor dem starken Môrolde?
before the strong Morold?

8340 wie betroug er Îsolde,
how deceived he Isolde,

die wîsen küniginne,
the wise queen,

sîne tôtvîndinne,
his mortal-she-enemy,

daz sî sîn alsô flîzec was,
that she of-him so diligent was,

biz daz er von ir hant genas?
until that he by her hand survived?

8345 merket wunder, hoeret her:
mark wonder, hear hither:

der parâtiere, wie kan er
the trickster, how can he

gesehendiû ougen blenden
seeing eyes blind

und allez daz verenden,
and all that finish,

daz er ze endenne hât!«
what he to finish has!«

8350 Hie mite gevielens an den rât,
Here with fell-they on the counsel,

die Markes râtes pflâgen,
who Mark's counsel kept,

daz si Marke an lâgen
that they Mark on lay

beidiu fruo und spâte
both early and late

mit flîzeclîchem râte,
with diligent counsel,

daz er ein wîp nâme, 8355
that he a wife should-take,

von der er zerben kâme
from whom he to-beirs should-come

einer tohter oder eines suns.
of-a daughter or of-a son.

Marke sprach: »got der hât uns
Mark spoke: »God he has us

einen guoten erben gegeben;
a good heir given;

got helfe uns, daz er müeze leben! 8360
God help us, that he may live!

Tristan, die wîle er leben sol,
Tristan, the while he live shall,

sô wizzet endelîche wol,
so know truly well,

sone sol niemer künigîn
so shall never queen

noch frouwe hie ze hove gesîn.«
nor lady here at court be.»

hie mite wart aber des hazzes mê, 8365
here with became however of-the hate more,

des nîdes aber dô mê dan ê,
of-the envy however then more than before,

den sî Tristande truogen,
which they to-Tristan bore,

und begunde ouch an genuogen
and began also in many

ûz brechen alsô sêre,
out break so sorely,

- 8370 daz sîz in dô nie mêre
that they-it him then never more
 vor verhelen kunden
before hide could
 und ime ze manegen stunden
and him at many hours
 die gebærde buten und diu wort,
the bearing offered and the words,
 daz er ervorhte den mort
that he feared the murder
- 8375 und was in den sorgen ie,
and was in the cares ever,
 daz si eteswenne und eteswie
that they sometime and somehow
 den rât inein getrügen,
the counsel together should-carry,
 daz si in mortlîche erslüegen.
that they him murderously should-slay.
 sînen œheim Marken den bat er,
his uncle Mark him asked he,
- 8380 daz er der lanthêrren ger
that he of-the land-lords desire
 ze einem ende bræhte
to an end should-bring
 und durch got bedæhte
and for God should-consider
 sîn angest unde sîne nôt.
his fear and his distress.
 er enwiste, wenne ez sîn tât
he not-knew, when it his death
- 8385 und sîn ende wære.
and his end were.

sîn œheim der gewære

his uncle the true

der sprach: »neve Tristan,

he spoke: »nephew Tristan,

swîc, ine kume hie niemer an:

be-silent, I come here never on:

ine ger niht erben niuwan dîn.

I desire not heirs but thee.

ouch soltu gâr ân angest sîn

also shalt-thou wholly without fear be

umbe dînen lîp und umbe dîn leben:

about thy body and about thy life:

ich wil dir guoten fride geben.

I will thee good peace give.

ir aller nîden unde ir haz

of-them all envy and their hatred

nu, sô dir got, waz wirret dir daz?

now, so-help thee God, what troubles thee that?

hazzen unde nîden

hating and envying

daz muoz der biderbe liden:

that must the worthy suffer:

der man der wirdet al die frist,

the man he becomes-worthy all the time,

die wîle und er geniten ist.

the while and he envied is.

wirde unde nît diu zwei diu sint

worth and envy the two they are

rehte also ein muoter unde ir kint.

right as a mother and her child.

diu werde diu birt alle zît

the worth it bears all time

und fûeret haz unde nît.

and brings hatred and envy.

8390

8395

8400

wen gevellet ouch mē hazzes an
whom befalls also more of-hate on

dan einen sæligen man?
than a blessed man?

8405 diu sælde ist arm unde swach,
the fortune is poor and weak,

diu nie dekeinen haz gesach.
which never any hatred saw.

lebe iemer und wirp iemer daz,
live ever and strive ever that,

daz du einen tac sîst âne haz:
that thou one day be without hatred:

dû enwirbest niemer daz,
thou achievest never that,

8410 daz du iemer werdest âne haz.
that thou ever become without hatred.

wellestu aber von böeser diet
(if)-wilt-thou however by wicked folk

ungehazzet sîn, sô sing ir liet
unhated be, so sing their song

und wis mit in ein böese wiht,
and be with them a wicked wight,

sone hazzent sî dich niht.
so hate they thee not.

8415 Tristan, swaz ieman getuo,
Tristan, whatever anyone do,

sô rihte dû dich ie dar zuo,
so direct thou thyself ever there to,

daz du hôhes muotes sîs:
that thou of-high spirit be:

wis vor bedenkende alle wîs
be before considering all ways

dînen frumen und dîn êre
thy profit and thy honor

und enrât mir daz niht mêre,
and advise me that not more,

8420

daz dir ze schaden müge ergân.
what to-thee to harm may go.

swaz rede hier umbe wirt getân,
whatever speech here about is done,

des envolge ich weder in noch dir.«
of-it follow I neither them nor thee.»

»hêrre, sô gebietet mir,
»lord, so command me,

sô wil ich von dem hove varn:
so will I from the court fare:

8425

ine mac mich vor in niht bewarn.
I can myself before them not guard.

sol ich bî disem hazze wesen,
(if)-shall I by this hate be,

sone kan ich niemer genesen.
so can I never survive.

ê ich sus angestlîche
before I thus fearfully

elliu künicrîche
all kingdoms

8430

wolte haben ze mîner hant,
would have to my hand,

ich wære ê iemer âne lant.«
I would-be rather ever without land.»

The Barons' Counsel

XVI

At Tristan's urging Mark calls his council, which proposes Isolde of Ireland as his wife, since the match might end the enmity and bring him Ireland. Mark swears to have no one else, trusting that it is impossible. The council asks that Tristan carry the suit; Mark refuses to risk him, but Tristan insists on going and on taking twenty of the barons. With those twenty barons, twenty of Mark's knights, and sixty hired men, a hundred in all, he sails. The poet mocks the tale of a swallow's hair.

Do Marke sînen Ernest sach,

When Mark his earnest saw,

er bat in swîgen unde sprach:

he bade him be-silent and spoke:

8435 »neve, swie gerne ich stæte

»nephew, however gladly I constancy

und triuwe zuo dir hæte,

and faithfulness to thee had,

sone gestatest dû mirs niht.

so allowest thou me-it not.

swaz sô nû hier ûz geschiht,

whatever so now here out-of happens,

dâ bin ich gân unschuldic an.

there am I wholly innocent on.

8440 swie ich dir nû gevolgen kan,

however I thee now follow can,

dâ bin ich aber bereite zuo.

there am I however ready to.

sage an, wie wildu, daz ich tuo?»

say on, how wilt-thou, that I do?»

»dâ besendet iuwern hoverât,

»there summon your court-council,

der iuch hier ûf geleitet hât,

which you here up led has,

und ervaret iegeliches muot:

and find-out each's spirit:

frâget, wie si dunke guot,

ask, how them seem good,

daz ir hie mite gebâret;

that you here with behave;

ir willen sô gevâret,

their will so explore,

daz ez mit êren mûge gestân.«

that it with honors may stand.«

nu diz wart schiere getân,

now this was quickly done,

daz si alle wâren besant.

that they all were summoned.

nu die gerieten ouch zehant

now they advised also at-once

und niuwan durch Tristandes nôt,

and only for Tristan's distress,

möhte ez gesîn, diu schœne Îsôt

might it be, the fair Isolde

diu gezæme im wol ze wîbe

she would-befit him well as wife

an geburt, an tugent, an lîbe,

in birth, in virtue, in body,

und stâten ouch den rât alsô.

and confirmed also the counsel so.

vür Marken kâmens alle dô;

before Mark came-they all then;

ir einer, der ez kunde,

of-them one, who it could,

der sprach mit einem munde

he spoke with one mouth

ir aller willen unde ir muot:

of-them all will and their spirit:

8445

8450

8455

8460

»hêrre,« sprach er, »uns dunket guot,
»lord,« spoke he, »us seems good,

diu schœne Îsôt von Îrlant,
the fair Isolde of Ireland,

als al den landen ist bekant,
as to-all the lands is known,

8465 diu uns und in gelegen sint,
which us and them near are,

diu ist ein maget unde ein kint,
she is a maiden and a child,

an die wîplichiu sælekeit
on whom womanly blessedness

alle die sælde hât geleit,
all the fortune has laid,

die si dar gelegen kunde,
which it thither lay could,

8470 als ir ze maneger stunde
as you at many-a hour

von ir selbe habet vernomen,
of her yourself have heard,

diu ist sælic unde vollekomen
she is blessed and perfect

an lebene unde an lîbe;
in living and in body;

mag iu diu ze wîbe
(if)-may to-you she as wife

8475 und uns ze frouwen werden,
and to-us as lady become,

sone kan uns ûf der erden
so can to-us on the earth

an wîbe niemer baz geschehen.«
in woman never better happen.«

der künic sprach: »lât, hêrre, sehen,
the king spoke: »let, lord, see,

ob ich die gerne wolte hân,
if I her gladly would have,

wie solte ez iemer ergân?
how should it ever go?

8480

wan nemet ir doch in iuvern sin,
for take you yet into your mind,

wie ez under uns und under in
how it between us and between them

nu guote wîle sî gewant:
now good while be turned:

uns hazzet liute unde lant.
us hates people and land.

Gurmûn ist mir von herzen gram
Gurmun is to-me from heart hostile

8485

und hât ouch reht, ich bin im sam.
and has also right, I am to-him same.

wer getrüege iemer under uns zwein
who carried ever between us two

sô grôze friuntschaft inein?«
so great friendship together?»

»hêrre,« sprâchens aber dô:
»lord,« spoke-they again then:

»ez füeget sich vil dicke alsô,
»it happens itself very often so,

8490

daz under landen schade ergât;
that between lands harm goes;

sô suln wir beidenthalben rât
so shall we on-both-sides counsel

beidiu suochen unde vinden
both seek and find

und suln ez mit ir kinden
and shall it with their children

wider ze suone bringen.
back to reconciliation bring.

8495

ûz hezlîchen dingen

out-of hateful things

wirt dicke michel friuntschaft.

becomes often great friendship.

sît ir hie zuo gedanchaft:

be you here to thoughtful:

ir muget noch wol geleben den tac,

you may still well live-to-see the day,

8500 daz Îrlant iuwer werden mac.

that Ireland yours become may.

Îrlant stât niuwan an in drîn:

Ireland stands only on them three:

künic unde künigîn

king and queen

an Îsôte eine geerbet sint;

on Isolde alone inherited are;

si ist ir einigez kint.«

she is their only child.«

8505 des antwurte in dô Marke:

of-it answered them then Mark:

»Tristan der hât mich starke

»Tristan he has me strongly

in gedanke durch si brâht;

into thought for her brought;

ich hân vil durch sî gedâht,

I have much about her thought,

als er si lobete wider mich.

as he her praised toward me.

8510 von den gedanken bin ouch ich

from the thoughts am also I

von den andern allen

from the others all

sô sêre an sî gevallen,

so sorely on her fallen,

sine müge mir danne werden,
unless-she may to-me then become,

sone wirt ûf dirre erden
so becomes on this earth

niemer dekeiniu mîn wîp,
never any my wife,

8515

sam mir got und mîn selbes lîp.«
so-help me God and my own body.«

den eit tet er niht umbe daz,
the oath did he not for that,

daz ime sîn gemüete iht baz
that to-him his mind at-all better

sô hin stüende danne her:
so thither should-stand than hither:

durch die kündekeit swuor er,
for the cunning swore he,

8520

daz es im gâr was ungedâht,
that it to-him wholly was unthought,

daz ez iemer würde zende brâht.
that it ever should-be to-end brought.

Des küneges rât sprach aber dô:

The king's counsel spoke again then:

»hêrre, gefüezet irz alsô,
»lord, arrange you-it so,

daz mîn hêr Tristan, der hie stât,
that my lord Tristan, who here stands,

8525

der dâ ze hove künde hât,
who there at court acquaintance has,

iuwer botschaft dâ werben wil,
your embassy there pursue will,

sô ist ez allez an ein zil
so is it all to a goal

und an ein stætez ende brâht.
and to a steady end brought.

- 8530 **der ist wîse und wol bedâht**
he is wise and well considered
und sælic zallen dingen;
and blessed in-all things;
der mag ez ze ende bringen.
he may it to end bring.
er kan ir aller sprâche wol,
he knows of-them all language well,
er endet, swaz er enden sol.«
he finishes, whatever he finish shall.«
- 8535 **»ir râtet übel,« sprach Marke,**
»you advise ill,« spoke Mark,
»ir flîzet iuch ze starke
»you busy yourselves too strongly
Tristandes schaden und sîner nôt.
Tristan's harm and his distress.
er ist doch zeinem mâle tôt
he is yet at-one time dead
vür iuch und iuwer erben.
for you and your heirs.
- 8540 **ir sult in aber sterben**
you shall him however kill
ze dem anderen mâle.
at the other time.
nein ir von Kurnewâle,
no you of Cornwall,
ir müezet selbe dâ hin.
you must yourselves there thither.
nimêre râtet mir ûf in.«
no-more advise me on him.«
- 8545 **»hêrre,« sprach aber Tristan,**
»lord,« spoke again Tristan,
»sine misseredent niht hier an.
»they misspeak not here on.

ez wære wol gefüege,

it would-be well fitting,

swâ iuch der muot zuo trüege,

wherever you the spirit to should-carry,

griffe ich ez beltlicher an

should-grasp I it more-boldly on

und bereiter danne ein ander man,

and more-readily than an other man,

und ist ouch reht, daz ich ez tuo.

and is also right, that I it do.

hêrre, ich bin harte guot dar zuo:

lord, I am very good there to:

ez enwirbet zwâre nieman baz.

it achieves truly no-one better.

gebietet et in allen daz,

command just them all that,

daz si selbe mit mir varn,

that they themselves with me fare,

hin unde her mit mir bewarn

thither and hither with me guard

iuwer dinc und iuwer êre.«

your affair and your honor.»

»nein, dû enkumest niht mêre

»no, thou comest not more

in ir gewalt und in ir hant,

into their power and into their hand,

sît dich got wider hât gesant.«

since thee God back has sent.»

»hêrre, zwâre diz muoz wesen:

»lord, truly this must be:

suln sî dâ sterben oder genesen,

(if)-shall they there die or survive,

daz muoz ouch mir mit in geschehen.

that must also to-me with them happen.

8550

8555

8560

ich wil si selbe lâzen sehen,

I will them themselves let see,

8565 belîbet diz lant erben frî,

(if)-remains this land of-beirs free,

ob daz von mînen schulden sî.

if that by my fault be.

heizet si sich bereiten!

bid them themselves prepare!

ich wil den kiel leiten

I will the keel steer

und fûeren mit mîn selbes hant

and lead with my own hand

8570 in daz sælege Îrlant

into the blessed Ireland

hin wider ze Develîne

thither back to Dublin

gegen der sunnen schîne,

toward the sun's shining,

der manegem herzen fröude birt.

which to-many-a heart joy bears.

wer weiz, ob uns diu schœne wirt.

who knows, if to-us the fair becomes.

8575 hêrre, würde iu diu schœne Îsôt,

lord, became to-you the fair Isolde,

lægen wir danne alle tôt,

lay we then all dead,

dâ wære lützel schaden an.«

there would-be little harm on.«

und alse Markes râtman

and when Mark's counselors

gehôrten, war diu rede gie,

heard, whither the speech went,

sine wurden alse riuwic nie
they became so rueful never

8580

in allen ir jâren,
in all their years,

sô sî der rede wâren.
as they of-the speech were.

nu muose ez unde solte wesen.
now must it and should be.

Tristan hiez ûz dem hove lesen
Tristan bade out-of the court pick

des kûneges heinlichære
the king's intimates

8585

zweinzec ritter gewære
twenty knights true

und zuo der nôt die besten.
and for the need the best.

von lande und von gesten
from land and from guests

gewan er sehzc umbe solt.
gained he sixty for pay.

des râtes hete er âne golt
of-the council had he without gold

8590

zweinzec lantbarûne.
twenty land-barons.

sus was der cumpanjûne
thus was of-the companions

hundert und dekeiner mê.
hundred and none more.

mit den fuor Tristan über sê,
with them went Tristan over sea,

die wâren sîn geselleschaft,
they were his company,

8595

und fuorte ouch râtes die kraft
and led also of-supply the power

an spîse und an wæte,
in food and in clothing,

an anderm schifgeræte,
in other ship-gear,

daz sô vil liuten zuo ir vart
that so many people for their journey

8600 nie kiel sô wol berâten wart.
never keel so well supplied was.

Si lesent an Tristande,
They read about Tristan,

daz ein swalwe ze Îrlande
that a swallow to Ireland

von Kurnewâle kæme,
from Cornwall should-come,

ein frouwen hâr dâ næme
a lady's hair there should-take

8605 ze ir bûwe und zir geniste,
for its building and for-its nest,

(ine weiz, wâ sîz dâ wiste)
(I-not know, where she-it there knew)

und fuorte daz wider über sê.
and carried that back over sea.

geniste ie kein swalwe mê
nested ever any swallow more

mit solhem ungemache,
with such discomfort,

8610 sô vil sô sî bûsache
so much as she building-matter

bî ir in dem lande vant,
by her in the land found,

daz si über mer in fremediu lant
that she over sea into foreign lands

nâch ir bûgeræte streich?
for her building-gear roamed?

weiz got, hie spellet sich der leich,
knows God, here fables itself the lay,

hie lispet daz mære.
here lisps the tale.

8615

ouch ist ez alwære,
also is it foolish,

swer saget, daz Tristan ûf daz mer
whoever says, that Tristan on the sea

nâch wâne schiffete mit her
at venture sailed with army

und solte des niht nemen war,
and should of-it not take heed,

wie lange er füere oder war,
how long he should-fare or whitber,

8620

und enwiste ouch niht, wen suochen.
and knew also not, whom seek.

waz rach er an den buochen,
what avenged he on the books,

der diz hiez schriben unde lesen?
who this bade write and read?

jâ, wærens alle samet gewesen,
yes, would-have-they all together been,

der künec, der sî ûz sande,
the king, who them out sent,

8625

sînen rât von dem lande,
his council from the land,

die boten gouche unde soten,
the envoys fools and simpletons,

wærens alsô gewesen boten.
bad-they so been envoys.

The Second Voyage

XVII

The barons at sea curse the voyage, sure they will die, and trust only Tristan's wit. They land near Weisefort, where the king is staying, and anchor out of bowsbot. Tristan tells them to stay hidden while he, who speaks the language, deals with the townspeople; he will ride out alone in the morning, and if he has not returned in three or four days they are to flee home. The king's marshal and armed men come to the harbor, ordered to seize whoever lands until it is known if he is Mark's man.

Nu Tristan was ûf sîne vart

Now Tristan was on his way

8630 und schiffete allez hinewart

and sailed ever onward

er unde sîn geselleschaft;

he and his company;

der was ein teil vil sorchafft,

of-it was a part very anxious,

ich meine die barûne,

I mean the barons,

die zweinzic cumpanjûne,

the twenty companions,

8635 den rât von Kurnewâlê;

the council of Cornwall;

die heten zuo dem mâle

they had at the time

vil michel angest unde nôt:

very great fear and distress:

si wânden alle wesen tôd.

they thought all be dead.

si fluocheten der stunde

they cursed the hour

8640 mit herzen und mit munde,

with heart and with mouth,

daz der reise und der vart

that of-the journey and of-the voyage

ze Îrlande ie gedâht wart.

to Ireland ever thought was.

sîne kunden umbe ir eigen leben

they could about their own life

in selben keinen rât gegeben:

to-them selves no counsel give:

si rieten her, si rieten hin

they advised hither, they advised thither

und enkunden nie niht under in

and could never anything among them

gerâten, daz in tohte

advise, that them availed

und daz rât heizen mohte.

and that counsel be-called might.

und was ouch daz kein wunder:

and was also that no wonder:

hier umbe noch hier under

here about nor here under

was râtes niht wan zweier ein,

was of-counsel nothing but of-two one,

in müeze einez under zwein

them must one of two

bringen umbe ir leben frist,

bring about their life's respite,

âventiure oder list.

adventure or art.

der list was aber dâ tiure,

the art was however there dear,

sô was ouch âventiure

so was also adventure

ir keinem in wâne:

to-them none in belief:

8645

8650

8655

si wâren beider âne.

they were of-both without.

doch sprâchen ir genuoge:

yet spoke of-them many:

8660 »wîsheit unde fuoge

»wisdom and skill

der ist harte vil an disem man.

of-it is very much in this man.

ist, daz uns got gelückes gan,

(if)-is, that to-us God of-fortune grants,

wir mugen vil wol mit ime genesen,

we may very well with him survive,

wolte er dekeiner mâze wesen

would be any measure be

8665 an sîner blinden frecheit;

in his blind boldness;

der ist ze vil an in geleit:

of-it is too much on him laid:

er ist ze frech und ze gemuot,

he is too bold and too spirited,

ern ruochet hiute, waz er tuot;

he-not cares today, what he does;

ern gæbe niht ein halbez brôt

he would-give not a half bread

8670 umbe uns noch umbe sîn selbes tôt.

for us nor for his own death.

und iedoch unser bester wân

and yet our best belief

der muoz an sînen sælden stân:

it must on his fortunes stand:

sîn witze muoz uns lêre geben,

his wit must us teaching give,

wie wir gefristen daz leben.«

how we preserve the life.«

- Nu sî zÎrlande kâmen, 8675
Now they to-Ireland came,
- ir gelende dâ genâmen,
their landing there took,
- dâ man in seite mære,
where one them told tidings,
- daz der künic wære,
that the king were,
- ze Weiseforte vür die stât,
at Weisefort before the town,
- Tristan den anker werfen bat 8680
Tristan the anchor cast bade
- wol also verre von der habe,
well as far from the harbor,
- daz man mit einem bogen dar abe
that one with a bow thither off
- niht mohte haben geslagen ze in.
not could have shot to them.
- sîne lantbarûne bâten in,
his land-barons asked him,
- daz er durch got in seite, 8685
that he for God them told,
- mit waz gelegenheite
with what manner
- er wolte werben umbe daz wîp;
he would woo for the woman;
- ez gienge in sêre an den lîp,
it should-go them sorely on the life,
- ez diuhte sî und wære ouch guot,
it should-seem them and were also good,
- daz er in seite sînen muot. 8690
that he them told his spirit.
- Tristan sprach: »dâ entuot nimê,
Tristan spoke: »there do no-more,

bewart, daz iuwer keiner gê
take-care, that of-you none go

hin vür den liuten zougen;
thither before the people to-eyes;

weset alle hinne tougen
be all within secret

8695 wan knehte und marnære,
except squires and mariners,

die vorschen der mære
who ask of-the tidings

ûf der brucke vor der schiftür
on the gangway before the ship-door

und iuwer keiner kome dervür!
and of-you none come thereforth!

swîget unde tuot iuch in:
be-silent and put yourselves in:

8700 ich wil selbe dâ vor sîn,
I will myself there before be,

wan ich die lantsprâche kan.
for I the land-language know.

man wirt uns schiere komende an
one becomes us soon coming on

von den burgæren
from the burghers

mit übelîchen mæren;
with ill tidings;

8705 den muoz ich liegen disen tac,
to-them must I lie this day,

swaz ich in geliegen mac.
whatever I to-them lie may.

helet ir iuch hier inne;
hide you yourselves here within;

wan wirt man iuwer inne,
for (if)-becomes one of-you aware,

sô haben wir strît an der hant,
so have we battle at the hand,

und bestât uns allez daz lant.
and attacks us all the land.

8710

die wîle ich morgen ûze sî,
the while I tomorrow outside be,

(wan ich wil rîten hie bî
(for I will ride here by

ûf âventiure vil fruo,
on adventure very early,

mir gelinge oder entuo),
to-me succeed or not-do),

sô sî Kurvenal dâ vor
so be Kurvenal there before

8715

und ander mit im an dem tor,
and others with him at the door,

den diu sprâche sî bekant.
to-whom the language be known.

und eines dinges sît gemant:
and of-one thing be reminded:

ist, daz ich under wegen sî
(if)-is, that I on way be

vier tage oder drî,
four days or three,

8720

zehant enbîtet mîn nimê,
at-once wait for-me no-more,

entrinnet wider über sê
escape back over sea

und neret leben unde lîp;
and save life and body;

sô hân ich eine daz wîp
so have I alone the woman

verzinset mit dem lîbe,
paid-for with the body,

8725

sô râtet ir ze wîbe

so advise you as wife

iuwerm hêren, swar iuch dunke guot.

to-your lord, wherever you seems good.

diz ist mîn rât und ouch mîn muot.«

this is my counsel and also my spirit.«

Des küniges marschalch von Îrlant,

The king's marshal of Ireland,

8730 in des gewalt und in des hant

in whose power and in whose hand

ez allez stuont, stat unde habe,

it all stood, town and harbor,

der kam gerüeret dort her abe

he came spurred there hither off

gewâfent unde wîcgar

armed and battle-ready

mit einer michelen schar

with a great company

8735 beidiu der burgære unde ir boten,

both of-the burghers and their envoys,

als in von hove was geboten

as them from court was commanded

und als daz mære hie vor giht,

and as the tale here before says,

der dâ vor an daz mære siht:

who there before at the tale looks:

swer dar ze stade gestieze,

whoever thither to shore landed,

8740 daz man in vâhen hieze,

that one him seize should-bid,

biz man vil rehte erkande,

until one very rightly knew,

ob er von Markes lande

whether he from Mark's land

und des gesindes wære.

and of-the household were.

die selben wîzenære,

the same tormentors,

die leiden morttæten,

the hateful murderers,

8745

die manegen mort hæten

who many-a murder had

begangen mit unschulden

committed with innocence

ir hêrren ze hulden,

to-their lord for favor,

die kâmen in die habe gezogen

they came into the harbor drawn

mit armbrusten und mit bogen

with crossbows and with bows

8750

und mit anderre wer,

and with other weapons,

als von rehte ein roupfer.

as by right a robber.

The Merchant

XVIII

Tristan, in a traveling cloak, rows toward the harbor with Kurvenal and a golden cup, and asks to be heard. He claims to be a merchant from Normandy, parted by a storm from two companions, and threatens to put back to sea if refused peace. The marshal asks what he will give the king; he offers a mark of gold a day, and the cup to the marshal, who grants him peace. The poet then tells of the serpent: the king has sworn his daughter to its slayer, thousands have died, and it is Tristan's hope.

Des kielez meister Tristan

The keel's master Tristan

leite eine reisekappen an

put a travel-cloak on

8755 durch anders niht wan umbe daz,

for other nothing but for that,

daz er sich hæle deste baz.

that he himself should-hide the better.

ouch hiez er einen kopf dar tragen

also bade he a cup thither carry

von rôtem golde geslagen

of red gold beaten

und geworht ze fremedem prîse

and wrought to strange prize

8760 in engeloiser wîse.

in English manner.

sus trat er in ein schiffelîn

thus stepped he into a little-boat

und Kurvenal zuo ime dar in

and Kurvenal to him there in

und kêrte hin engegen der habe

and turned thither toward the harbor

und bôt in sînen gruoze hin abe

and offered them his greeting thither down

mit gebærden und mit munde,

with bearing and with mouth,

so er suozeste kunde.

as he most-sweetly could.

swaz aber des gruoze wære,

whatever however of-the greeting were,

genuoge burgære

many burghers

zen schiffelînen liefen,

to-the little-boats ran,

von stade genuoge riefen:

from shore many cried:

»habe an lant, habe an lant!«

»put to land, put to land!«

Tristan stiez in die habe zehant.

Tristan pushed into the harbor at-once.

»ir hêren,« sprach er, »saget mir,

»you lords,« spoke he, »tell me,

wie komet ir sus? waz tiutet ir

how come you thus? what mean you

mit disem ungeverte?

with this incivility?

iuwer gebærde die sint herte.

your bearing they are hard.

in weiz, wes ich mich versehen sol.

I-not know, of-what I myself expect shall.

8765

8770

8775

durch gotes willen, tuot sô wol,
for God's will, do so well,

sî ieman bî iu an der habe,
(if)-be anyone by you at the harbor,

8780 der gewalt von dem lande habe,
who power from the land has,

der hœre und verneme mich!«
he hear and understand me!«

»jâ,« sprach der marschalch, »hie bin ich:
»yes,« spoke the marshal, »here am I:

mîn gebærde und mîn geverte
my bearing and my conduct

diu werdent iu sô herte,
they become to-you so hard,

8785 daz ich binamen wizzen wil
that I truly know will

iuwer geverte unz ûf ein zil.«
your conduct until to an end.«

»entriuwen, hêrre,« sprach Tristan,
»in-truth, lord,« spoke Tristan,

»dâ habet ir mich bereite an;
»there have you me ready on;

der mir geswîgen hieze
who me be-silent should-bid

8790 und mich ze spruche lieze,
and me to speech should-let,

des selben wolte ich gerne biten,
of-that same would I gladly ask,

daz man mit guotlichen siten
that one with kindly manners

und sô mîn wort vernæme,
and so my word should-bear,

als ez dem lande zæme.«
as it the land should-befit.«

hie mite wart ime ein stille gegeben.

here with was him a silence given.

8795

»hêrre,« sprach Tristan, »unser leben,

»lord,« spoke Tristan, »our life,

unser geburt und unser lant

our birth and our land

dar umbe ist ez alsô gewant,

there about is it so turned,

als ich iu hie bediute:

as I you here explain:

wir sîn werbende liute

we are trading people

8800

und mugen uns des niht geschamen.

and may us of-it not be-asbamed.

koufliute heizen wir binamen,

merchants are-called we truly,

ich und mîn cumpanîe,

I and my company,

und sîn von Normandîe.

and are from Normandy.

unser wîp und unser kint sint dâ.

our wives and our children are there.

8805

wir selbe sîn wâ unde wâ

we ourselves are where and where

von lande ze lande

from land to land

koufende aller hande

buying of-all kinds

und gewinnen, daz wir uns betragen.

and gain, that we us sustain.

und innen disen drîzec tagen

and within these thirty days

8810

dô fuoren wir von lande dan,

then went we from land thence,

ich und zwêne ander koufman.

I and two other merchants.

wir drî wir wolten under uns drîn

we three we would between us three

mit geselleschaft zÎberne sîn;

with company to-Ireland be;

8815 und sint wol ahte tage iezuo,

and are well eight days now,

daz uns an einem tage fruo

that us on a day early

von hinnen verre ein wint bestuont,

from hence far a wind assailed,

als uns die winde dicke tuont;

as us the winds often do;

der hât uns drî gescheiden,

it has us three parted,

8820 mich einen von in beiden,

me alone from them both,

und enweiz niht, wie si sîn gevarn,

and know not, how they are fared,

wan got der müeze sî bewarn,

but God he may them guard,

sî sîn lebende oder tô!t

they be living or dead!

ich bin mit micheler nô!t

I am with great distress

8825 vil manegen übelen wec geslagen

very many-a ill way struck

in disen swæren ahte tagen;

in these heavy eight days;

und gester umbe den mitten tac,

and yesterday about the mid day,

dô sturm unde wint gelac,

when storm and wind lay-still,

do erkande ich berge unde lant.
then recognized I mountains and land.

durch ruowen kêrte ich zehant 8830
for rest turned I at-once

und ruowete unz hiute dâ;
and rested until today there;

hiute an dem morgen iesâ,
today in the morning at-once,

dô ez lichtende wart,
when it dawning became,

dô streich ich aber ûf mîne vart
then struck I again on my way

alhie her wider Weisefort. 8835
all-here hither toward Weisefort.

nu vert ez hie wirs danne dort;
now fares it here worse than there;

ich wæne, ich bin noch ungenesen.
I think, I am still unsaved.

doch wânde ich hie genesen wesen,
yet thought I here saved be,

wan ich die stat erkenne
for I the city know

und bin ouch eteswenne 8840
and am also sometime

mit koufliuten hie gewesen.
with merchants here been.

deste baz wânde ich genesen
the better thought I survive

und hie genâde vinden.
and here mercy find.

nu bin ich sturmwinden
now am I to-storm-winds

alrêrste in die hant gevarn, 8845
first-of-all into the hand gone,

doch mac mich got noch wol bewarn;

yet may me God still well guard;

sît ich bî disem gesinde

since I by this household

weder fride noch ruowe vinde,

neither peace nor rest find,

sô kêre ich wider ûf daz mer.

so turn I back onto the sea.

8850 dâ hân ich al der werlde wer

there have I of-all the world defense

und strît genuogen an der fluht.

and battle enough in the flight.

geruochet aber ir iuwer zuht

deign however you your courtesy

und iuwer êre an mir begân,

and your honor on me do,

der mâze als ich hie guotes hân,

of-the measure as I here of-goods have,

8855 daz teile ich iu vil gerne mite

that share I you very gladly with

umbe eine kurzlîche bite,

for a short request,

daz ir mir und mîner habe

that you me and my goods

schaffet fride in dirre habe,

make peace in this harbor,

biz ich besuoche unde besehe,

until I search and see,

8860 ob mir diu sælde geschehe,

whether to-me the fortune happen,

daz ich mîn lantgesinde

that I my land-household

ervorsche unde ervinde.

find-out and find.

und wellet ir mich des gewern,

and (if)-will you me of-it grant,

sô heizet mir ouch fride bern.

so bid me also peace bear.

si gâhent vaste dort her,

they hurry fast there hither,

ine weiz welhe oder wer,

I-not know which or who,

in kleinen schiffelînen;

in little little-boats;

oder ich var wider zen mînen

or I fare back to-the mine

und fürhte iuch alle niht ein strô.«

and fear you all not a straw.«

der marschal der hiez si alle dô

the marshal he bade them all then

wider kêren an daz lant.

back turn onto the land.

zem gaste sprach er aber zehant:

to-the guest spoke he again at-once:

»waz wellet ir dem kûnege geben,

»what will you to-the king give,

daz ich iu guot unde leben

that I you goods and life

in disem rîche bewar?«

in this realm protect?«

aber sprach der ellende dar:

again spoke the stranger there:

»hêrre, ich gibe im alle tage,

»lord, I give him all days,

swâ ichz gewinne oder bejage,

wherever I-it win or gain,

eine marc von rôtem golde;

a mark of red gold;

8865

8870

8875

- 8880 und sult ir iu ze solde
and shall you for-yourself as pay
 und ze miete disen kopf hân,
and as reward this cup have,
 ob ich mich an iuch mac verlân.«
if I myself on you may trust.«
 »jâ,« sprâchens alle zehant,
»yes,« spoke-they all at-once,
 »er ist hie marschalc über diz lant.«
»he is here marshal over this land.«
- 8885 der marschalc sîne gâbe nam,
the marshal his gift took,
 diu dûhte in rîche und lobesam,
it seemed to-him rich and praiseworthy,
 und hiez in stôzen in die habe;
and bade him push into the harbor;
 sînem lîbe und sîner habe
to-his body and to-his goods
 fride unde genâde er dô gebôt.
peace and grace he then commanded.
- 8890 dâ wâren sî rîch unde rôd,
there were they rich and red,
 ich meine zins unde solt:
I mean tribute and pay:
 rîch unde rôd des kûneges golt,
rich and red the king's gold,
 des boten solt rôd unde rîch:
the envoy's pay red and rich:
 si wâren beide rîlich.
they were both rich.
- 8895 daz half ouch ime, daz ime geschach
that helped also him, that to-him happened
 beidiu genâde unde gemach.
both grace and comfort.

Nu Tristan der ist ze fride komen.

Now Tristan he is to peace come.

iedoch hât nieman vernomen,

yet has no-one heard,

waz er welle ane gân;

what he will on go;

nu sol man iuch ez wizzen lân,

now shall one you it know let,

8900

sone belanget iuch des mæres niht.

so longs you for-the tale not.

daz mære saget unde giht

the tale says and avows

von einem serpande,

of a serpent,

der was dô dâ ze lande.

it was then there in land.

der selbe leide vâlant

the same hateful devil

8905

der hete liute unde lant

it had people and land

mit alsô schedelîchem schaden

with so harmful harm

sô schedelîchen überladen,

so harmfully overloaded,

daz der künec swuor einen eit

that the king swore an oath

bî küniclîcher wârheit,

by kingly truth,

8910

swer ime benæme daz leben,

whoever it should-take the life,

er wolte im sîne tohter geben,

he would him his daughter give,

der edel und ritter wære.

who noble and knight were.

diz selbe lantmære

this same land-tale

8915 und daz vil wunneclîche wîp

and the very blissful woman

diu verluren tûsenden den lîp,

they cost to-thousands the life,

die dar ze kampfe kâmen,

who thither to combat came,

ir ende dâ genâmen;

their end there took;

des mæres was daz lant vol.

of-the tale was the land full.

8920 diz mære erkande ouch Tristan wol:

this tale knew also Tristan well:

diz eine starcte in dar an,

this one strengthened him there on,

daz er der reise ie began,

that he the journey ever began,

diz was sîn meistiu zuoversiht,

this was his greatest confidence,

anderes trôstes hete er niht.

of-other comfort had he not.

The Dragon

XIX

At dawn Tristan rides armed toward the dragon's valley. He sees four knights fleeing, among them the queen's steward, who courts the young queen against her will and rides out only to be seen. Tristan drives his spear through the dragon's jaws into its heart, but it devours his horse. He pursues it to a rock wall, where it nearly burns him, until the spear works in and he kills it with his sword. He cuts out its tongue, hides it in his bosom, and sinks in a pool, felled by the tongue's fumes.

Nu ist es zît, nu kêre zuo!

8925

Now is it time, now turn to!

des anderen tages fruô

of-the other day early

sô wâfente er sich alsô wol,

so armed he himself so well,

als ein man ze nœten sol.

as a man at needs shall.

ûf ein starkez ors saz er,

on a strong horse sat he,

er hiez im reichen ein sper

8930

he bade him hand a spear

grôz unde veste,

big and firm,

daz sterkeste und daz beste,

the strongest and the best,

daz man in dem kiele vant.

which one in the keel found.

ûf sînen wec reit er zehant

on his way rode he at-once

über velt und über gevilde;

8935

over field and over open-country;

er nam im in der wilde
he took for-himself in the wilderness

manege kêre und manege vart.
many-a turn and many-a course.

und alse der tac stigende wart,
and when the day rising became,

dô liez er vaste hine gân
then let he fast thither go

8940 wider daz tal zAnferginân,
toward the valley to-Anferginan,

dâ was des trachen heimwist,
there was the dragon's home,

alsô man an der geste list.
as one in the story reads.

nu sach er verre dort hin dan
now saw he far there thither off

vier gewâfende man
four armed men

8945 über ungeverte und über velt
over trackless-ground and over field

ein lützel balder danne enzelt
a little faster than ambling

fliehende gâlopiere;
fleeing galloping;

der einer von den vieren
of-them one of the four

truhsæze was der künigîn,
steward was of-the queen,

8950 der was ouch unde wolte sîn
he was also and would be

der jungen küniginne amîs
of-the young queen lover

wider ir willen alle wîs;
against her will all ways;

und alse ieman ze velde reit

and when anyone to field rode

durch gelücke und durch manheit,

for fortune and for manhood,

sô was ouch der truhsæze dâ

so was also the steward there

8955

eteswenne und eteswâ

sometime and somewhere

durch niht, wan daz man jæhe,

for nothing, but that one should-say,

daz man ouch in dâ sæhe,

that one also him there should-see,

dâ man nâch âventiure rite,

where one for adventure rode,

und anders was ouch niht dermite;

and other was also nothing therewith;

8960

wan ern gesach den trachen nie,

for he saw the dragon never,

er enkêrte belderîchen ie.

he unless-turned quickly ever.

Nu Tristan wart vil wol gewar

Now Tristan became very well aware

an der fliehenden schar,

from the fleeing company,

der trache der wære etswâ dâ,

the dragon it were somewhere there,

8965

und stapfete ouch des endes sâ

and stepped also of-that direction at-once

und reit unlange, unz er gesach

and rode not-long, until he saw

sîner ougen ungemach,

of-his eyes' discomfort,

den egeslîchen trachen;

the dreadful dragon;

- 8970 **der warf ûz sînem rachen**
it threw out-of its jaws
rouch unde flammen unde wint
smoke and flames and wind
alse des tiuveles kint
as the devil's child
und kêrte gein im aldort her.
and turned toward him there hither.
Tristan der sancte daz sper,
Tristan he lowered the spear,
- 8975 **daz ors er mit den sporen nam:**
the horse he with the spurs took:
sô swinde er dar gerüeret kam,
so swiftly he thither spurred came,
daz er im daz sper zem giele in stach,
that he it the spear into-the maw in stabbed,
sô daz ez ime den rachen brach
so that it it the jaws broke
und innen an dem herzen want,
and inside at the heart turned,
- 8980 **und er selbe ûf den serpent**
and he himself on the serpent
sô sêre mit dem orse stiez,
so sorely with the horse struck,
daz er daz ors dâ tôtez liez
that he the horse there dead left
und er dâ von vil kûme entran.
and he there from very barely escaped.
der trache gieng ez aber an
the dragon went it however on
- 8985 **mit vrâze und mit fiure,**
with devouring and with fire,

unz ez der ungehiure

until it the monstrous-one

vor dem satele gâr verswande.

before the saddle wholly consumed.

nu was im aber als ande

now was it however so painful

daz sper, daz in dâ sêrte,

the spear, that it there wounded,

daz er von dem orse kêrte

that it from the horse turned

8990

hin wider ein steingevelle.

thither toward a rock-heap.

Tristan sîn kampfgeselle

Tristan its combat-fellow

der kêrte im nâch, rehte ûf sîn spor.

he turned him after, right on its track.

der veige streich im allez vor

the doomed-one swept him ever before

mit solher ungedulte,

with such impatience,

8995

daz er den walt vulte

that it the forest filled

mit egeslîcher stimme

with dreadful voice

und hürste vil von grimme

and thickets much from rage

abe brande und ûz der erden sluoc.

off burned and out-of the earth struck.

des treib er vil und sô genuoc,

of-it drove it much and so enough,

9000

biz in der smerze überwant

until it the pain overcame

und under eine steinwant

and under a rock-wall

vil nâhen sich gedruete.

very closely itself pressed.

Tristan daz swert dô zucte

Tristan the sword then drew

9005 und wânde, er funde in âne strît.

and thought, he should-find it without battle.

nein ez wart engestlicher sît

no it became more-frightening afterward

dan ez ê mâles wære.

than it before times were.

doch enwas ez niht sô swære:

yet was it not so heavy:

Tristan ruorte aber den trachen an,

Tristan attacked again the dragon on,

9010 der trache wider an den man

the dragon back at the man

und brâhte in zalsô grôzer nôt,

and brought him to-so great distress,

daz er wânde wesen tôt.

that he thought be dead.

er liez in nie ze were komen,

it let him never to defense come,

er hæte im schiere benomen

it would-have him quickly taken

9015 beidiu slege unde wer.

both blows and defense.

dô was sîn ouch ein michel her:

then was of-it also a great army:

er fuorte mit im an den kampf

it led with it to the combat

beidiu rouch unde tampf

both smoke and fume

und andere stiure

and other aid

an slegen unde an fiure,

in blows and in fire,

9020

an zenen unde an griffen,

in teeth and in claws,

die wâren gesliffen,

they were sharpened,

sêre scharph unde wahs,

sorely sharp and keen,

noch wahser danne ein scharsahs.

still keener than a razor.

dâ mite treib er in umbe

there with drove it him around

9025

manege engestliche krumbe

many-a frightening curve

von boumen ze buschen.

from trees to bushes.

dâ muose er sich vertuschen

there must he himself hide

und fristen, swie er mohte,

and preserve, however he could,

wan ime der kampf niht tohte

for him the combat not availed

9030

und hete ez doch sô sêre

and had it yet so sorely

versuochet mit der kêre,

tried with the turning,

daz ime der schilt vor der hant
that him the shield before the hand

vil nâch ze kolen was verbrant,
very nearly to coals was burned,

9035 wan er gienc in mit fiure an,
for it went him with fire on,

daz er im kûme vor entran.
that he it barely before escaped.

doch werte ez niht vil lange,
yet lasted it not very long,

der mortsame slange
the murderous snake

der kam schiere dar an,
it came soon there on,

9040 daz er zwîvelen began,
that it doubt began,

und ime daz sper sô nâhen gie,
and it the spear so near went,

daz er sich aber nider lie
that it itself again down let

und want sich ange und ange.
and wound itself tightly and tightly.

Tristan was aber unlange,
Tristan was however not-long,

9045 er kam gerüeret balde her,
he came spurred quickly hither,

daz swert daz stach er zuo dem sper
the sword that stabbed he to the spear

zem herzen in unz an die hant.
to-the heart in until to the hand.

nu lie der veige vâlant

now let the doomed devil

einen dôz und eine stimme

a roar and a voice

sô griulich und sô grimme

so horrible and so fierce

9050

ûz sînem veigen giele,

out-of its doomed maw,

als himel und erde viele,

as heaven and earth fell,

und daz der selbe mortschal

and that the same death-cry

verre in daz lant erhal

far into the land resounded

und Tristan harte sêre erschrac.

and Tristan very sorely took-fright.

9055

und alse der trache dô gelac,

and when the dragon then lay-still,

daz er in tôten gesach,

that he it dead saw,

den giel er ime ûf brach

the maw he it up broke

mit micheler arbeit;

with great hardship;

ûz dem rachen er im sneit

out-of the jaws he it cut

9060

der zungen mit dem swerte

of-the tongue with the sword

der mâze, als er ir gerte;

of-the measure, as he of-it desired;

in sînen buosem er si stiez,

into his bosom he it thrust,

den giel er wider ze samene liez.

the maw he back to together let.

9065 sus kêrte er gein der wilde hin.
thus turned he toward the wilderness thither.

daz tete er aber durch den sin:
that did he however for the reason:

er wolte sich verbergen dâ,
he would himself hide there,

den tac geruowen eteswâ
the day rest somewhere

und wider komen ze sîner maht
and back come to his strength

9070 und wolte danne hin ze naht
and would then thither at night

ze sînen lantgesellen wider.
to his land-comrades back.

nu zôch in aber diu hitze nider,
now drew him however the heat down,

die er beidiu von der arbeit
which he both from the hardship

und dâ zuo von dem trachen leit,
and there to from the dragon suffered,

9075 und müedete in sô sêre,
and wearied him so sorely,

daz er iezuo niemêre
that he now no-more

und vil kûme mohte leben.
and very barely could live.

nu gesach er eine lachen sweben
now saw he a pool float

smal unde mâtliche grôz,
narrow and moderately big,

9080 in die von einem velse flôz
into which from a rock flowed

ein küelez kleinez brunnelîn.
a cool small little-spring

dâ viel er alsô gewâfent in

there fell he so armed in

und sancte sich unz an den grunt:

and sank himself until to the ground:

er lie hie vor niwan den munt.

he left here before only the mouth.

dâ lag er den tac und die naht,

there lay he the day and the night,

9085

wan ime benam al sîne maht

for him took all his might

diu leide zunge, die er truoc;

the hateful tongue, which he bore;

der rouch, der von der an in sluoc,

the smoke, which from it on him struck,

der eine entworhte in garwe

it alone undid him wholly

an krefte und an der varwe,

in strength and in the color,

9090

daz er von dannen niht enkam,

that he from thence not came,

unz in diu künigîn dâ nam.

until him the queen there took.

The Steward

XX

The steward, hearing the dragon's death cry, rides fearfully to the place, falls from his horse in terror, and flees, then returns. Finding it dead, he charges its corpse crying for Isolde, then searches the wood for the true victor, meaning to kill him if he finds him weak. He hacks at the carcass, carries off the head, tells the court of his great danger, and claims the king's oath. The young Isolde vows she will stab herself before marrying him; her mother promises he will never have her.

Der truhsæze, also ich hân gesaget,

The steward, as I have said,

der der sæligen maget

who of-the blessed maiden

9095 friunt unde ritter wolte sîn,

friend and knight would be,

dem begunden die gedanke sîn

to-him began the thoughts his

ûf swellen harte grôze

up swell very greatly

von des trachen dôze,

from the dragon's roar,

der alsô griulich und als grôz

which so horribly and so loud

9100 über walt und über velt dôz.

over forest and over field roared.

in sîn herze er allez las,

into his heart he all read,

rechte also ez ouch ergangen was,

right as it also happened was,

und dâhte: »er ist binamen tôz

and thought: »it is truly dead

oder aber in alsô grôzer nôz,

or else in so great distress,

- daz ich in mag gewinnen 9105
that I it may gain
- mit eteslîchen sinnen.«
with some senses.«
- von jenen drîn er sich verstal,
from those three he himself stole,
- eine halden stapfete er ze tal
a slope stepped he to valley
- und lie wol balde hine gân,
and let very quickly thither go,
- hin dâ der schrei dô was getân;
thither where the cry then was done; 9110
- und alse er zuo dem orse kam,
and when he to the horse came,
- eine ruowe er ime dâ nam.
a rest he himself there took.
- bî dem sô habte er lange
by it so held he long
- trahtende klein und ange:
pondering small and anxiously:
- in nam der kurzen reise 9115
him took of-the short journey
- grôz angest unde freise.
great fear and dread.
- iedoch genante er über lanc
yet ventured he after long
- und reit als âne sînen danc
and rode as without his thanks
- erschrocken unde herzelôs
frightened and disheartened
- die rihte hin, dô er dâ kôs,
the direction thither, where he there perceived, 9120

daz daz loup und daz gras
that the foliage and the grass

vor ime abe gesenet was.
before him off singed was.

und kam in kurzer friste,
and came in short time,

ê danne er sîn iht wiste,
before than he of-it anything knew,

9125 rehte ûf den trachen, dâ er lac;
right upon the dragon, where it lay;

und er der truhsæze erschrac
and he the steward took-fright

als inneclîche sêre,
so inwardly sorely,

daz er nâch eine kêre
that he nearly a turn

zer erden hæte genomen,
to-the earth had taken,

9130 durch daz er ime sô bî was komen
because that he it so near was come

und ime sô nâhen gereit.
and it so close ridden.

nu was er aber zehant bereit,
now was he however at-once ready,

daz ors warf er sô balde wider,
the horse turned he so quickly back,

daz er mit dem orse nider
that he with the horse down

9135 ze einem hûfen gelac.
in a heap lay.

nu er sich wider ûf gewac,
now he himself again up raised,

ich meine von der erden,
I mean from the earth,

done mohte im state niht werden

then could him occasion not become

vor vorhten, die er hete,

for fears, which he had,

daz er sô vil getete,

that he so much did,

9140

daz er ûf daz ors gesæze:

that he on the horse should-sit:

der leide truhsæze

the hateful steward

er liez ez stân unde flôch.

he let it stand and fled.

dô ime dâ nieman nâch zôch,

when him there no-one after drew,

dô gestuont er unde sleich dô wider,

then stood-still he and crept then back,

9145

nâch sînem spere greif er nider,

after his spear reached he down,

daz ors er bî dem zügele nam,

the horse he by the rein took,

zeinem ronen er gezogen kam,

to-a tree-trunk he drawn came,

ûf daz ors er gesaz,

on the horse he sat,

sînes schaden er vergaz,

his harm he forgot,

9150

er sprancte verre dort hin dan

he spurred far there thither off

und sach her wider den trachen an,

and looked hither back the dragon at,

waz ampære er hæte,

what bearing it had,

ob er lebete oder entæte.

whether it lived or not-did.

- 9155 nu er in tôten ersach,
now he it dead saw,
 »heil, ob got wil!« er dô sprach,
»hail, if God will!« he then spoke,
 »hie ist âventiure funden:
»here is adventure found:
 ich bin ze guoten stunden
I am at good hours
 und ze heile komen her.«
and to fortune come hither:«
- 9160 hie mite sô neigete er daz sper,
here with so lowered he the spear,
 mit dem zûgel er hancte,
with the rein he let-hang,
 er hiu unde sprancte
he bewed and spurred
 und lie hin gân punieren,
and let thither go charging,
 punierende crôieren:
charging crying:
- 9165 »schevelier damoisêle,
»chevalier damoiselle,
 ma blunde Îsôt, ma bête!«
ma blonde Iseut, ma belle!«
 er stach ûf in mit solher kraft,
he stabbed upon it with such force,
 der starke eschine schaft
the strong ashen shaft
 daz er im durch die hant reit.
that it him through the hand rode.
- 9170 daz er aber dô niemêre streit,
that he however then no-more fought,
 daz liez er niuwan durch den list:
that left he only for the cunning:

er dâhte: »ob dirre in lebene ist,
he thought: »if this-one in life is,

der disen trachen hât erslagen,
who this dragon has slain,

sone kan ez mich niht vür getragen,
so can it me not forth carry,

daz ich hie mite hân ûf geleit.«
what I here with have up laid.»

9175

er kërte dannen unde reit
he turned thence and rode

und suochte her unde hin
and sought hither and thither

ûf den gedingen, obe er in
on the hope, if he him

iender hæte funden
anywhere had found

sô müeden oder sô wunden,
so weary or so wounded,

9180

daz ime der strît töhte
that to-him the battle should-avail

und mit im strîten möhte,
and with him fight might,

daz er in erslagen wolte haben
that he him slain would have

und in erslagenen begraben.
and him slain buried.

und alse er sîn dô niht envant,
and when he him then not found,

9185

»lâ, hêrre, varn!« dâhte er zehant,
»let, lord, fare!« thought he at-once,

»sweder er lebe oder entuo,
»whether he live or not-do,

bin ich der êrste derzuo,
(if)-am I the first thereto,

mich enwîset nieman dervan:

me directs no-one therefrom:

9190 ich bin gefriunt unde geman,

I am befriended and manned,

sô wert und sô genæme,

so worthy and so pleasing,

swer sich es an genæme,

whoever himself of-it on should-take,

der hæte doch dar an verlorn.«

he would-have yet there on lost.»

er lie hin rîten gân mit sporn

he let thither riding go with spurs

9195 ze sînem strîtesellen wider

to his battle-fellow back

und erbeizte dâ zer erden nider.

and dismounted there to-the earth down.

an sînen strît er wider vic

at his battle he again began

rehte an der stat, dâ er in lie:

right at the place, where he it left:

mit dem swerte, daz er truoc,

with the sword, which he bore,

9200 dâ mite gebecte er unde gesluoc

there with hacked he and struck

den vînt sô vil wâ unde wâ,

the enemy so much where and where,

biz ern verschriet dâ unde dâ.

until he-it cut-up there and there.

genuoc versuochte erz an den kragen:

enough tried he-it at the neck:

den hæte erm gerne abe geslagen;

it would-have he-from-it gladly off struck;

9205 dô was er sô herte und sô grôz,

then was it so hard and so big,

daz in der arbeit verdroz.

that him the hardship irked.

über einen ronen brach er daz sper:

over a tree-trunk broke he the spear:

daz vorder stücke, daz stach er

the front piece, that stabbed he

dem trachen zuo dem gorgen in,

to-the dragon to the gorge in,

als ez ein tjoste solte sîn.

as it a joust should be.

9210

Ûf sînen spanjôl saz er dô:

On his Spanish-horse sat he then:

er begunde frôlich unde frô

he began joyful and glad

ze Weiseforte in rüeren

to Weisefort in spur

und hiez balde ûz füeren

and bade quickly out bring

vier pfert und einen kanzwagen,

four horses and a cart,

9215

der daz houbet solte tragen;

which the head should carry;

und seite in allen mære,

and told them all tidings,

wie ime gelungen wære

how him succeeded were

und waz er angeste hie mite

and what he of-fears here with

und kumberlîcher nôete lite.

and of-distressful needs should-suffer.

9220

»jâ hêrre, al diu werlt,« sprach er,

»yes lord, all the world,« spoke he,

»diu enbiete niuwan ôre her,

»it offer only ear hither,

betrahte und sehe daz wunder an,
consider and see the wonder on,

waz der geherzete man
what the hearted man

9225 und der gestandene muot
and the steadfast spirit

durch liebes wîbes willen tuot!
for dear woman's will does!

daz ich der nôt, in der ich was,
that I of-the distress, in which I was,

ie dannen kam und ie genas,
ever thence came and ever survived,

des wundert unde wundert mich
of-it wonders and wonders me

9230 und weiz ouch wol binamen, wær ich
and know also well truly, were I

senfte also ein ander man gewesen,
soft as an other man been,

ine wære niemer genesen.
I would-be never survived.

ine weiz niht, wer er wære:
I know not, who he were:

ein âventiurære,
an adventurer,

9235 der ouch nâch âventiure reit,
who also for adventure rode,

der was zuo sîner veicheit,
he was to his doom,

ê danne ich kæme, zuo im komen,
before than I should-come, to it come,

der hât sîn ende dâ genomen.
he has his end there taken.

got hete sîn vergezzen:
God had of-him forgotten:

- sî sint beidiu vrezzen, 9240
they are both devoured,
- ros unde man ist allez mort.
horse and man is all murdered.
- daz ros daz lît noch halbez dort
the horse that lies still half there
- zekuwen unde besenget.
chewed and singed.
- waz töhte ez iu gelenget?
what availed it you lengthened?
- ich hân mê nœte erliten hie mite 9245
I have more needs suffered here with
- dan kein man ie durch wîp erlite.«
than any man ever for woman suffered.»
- sîne friunt er alle zuo sich nam,
his friends he all to himself took,
- ze dem serpande er wider kam
to the serpent he back came
- und zeigete in sîn wunder.
and showed them his wonder.
- er bat ouch al besunder, 9250
he asked also all apart,
- daz sî der wârheit jâhen,
that they the truth should-avow,
- als sî si dâ gesâhen.
as they it there should-see.
- daz houbet fuorte er mit im dan.
the bead brought he with him thence.
- sîne mâge und sîne man
his kinsmen and his men
- die ladete er, die besander, 9255
them invited he, them summoned-he,

nâch dem kûnege rander

for the king ran-he

und mante in sîner sicherheit.

and reminded him of-his pledge.

der rede der wart ein tac geleit

of-the speech for-it was a day laid

ze Weiseforte vür daz lant.

at Weisefort before the land.

9260 hie mite sô wart daz lant besant,

here with so was the land summoned,

die lantbarûne die mein ich.

the land-barons them mean I.

nu die bereiten alle sich,

now they prepared all themselves,

als in von hove was getaget.

as them from court was appointed.

Nu wart ouch al zehant gesaget

Now was also all at-once told

9265 ze hove den frouwen mære.

at court to-the ladies tidings.

die marter und die swære,

the torment and the grief,

die si alle heten dâ van,

which they all had there from,

dien gesach an frouwen nie kein man.

those saw on ladies never any man.

diu süeze maget, diu schœne Îsôt,

the sweet maiden, the fair Isolde,

9270 diu was rehte in ir herzen tôr,

she was right in her heart dead,

sô leiden tac si nie gesach.

so hateful day she never saw.

Îsôt ir muoter zuo ir sprach:

Isolde her mother to her spoke:

»nein, schœniu tohter, nein, lâ stân,
 »no, fair daughter, no, let stand,

lâ dir diz niht sô nâhen gân!
 let to-thee this not so near go!

wan sweder ez mit der wârheit
 for whether it with the truth

9275

oder aber mit lûge ist ûf geleit,
 or else with lie is up laid,

wir suln ez doch wol undervarn;
 we shall it yet well prevent;

ouch sol uns got dervor bewarn.
 also shall us God therefrom guard.

niht weine, tohter mîne:
 not weep, daughter mine:

die klâren ougen dîne
 the clear eyes thine

9280

diu ensulen niemer werden rôt
 they shall never become red

umbe alsô swechliche nôt.«
 about so paltry distress.«

»â muoter,« sprach diu schœne,
 »ah mother,« spoke the fair,

»frouwe, niht engehœne
 »lady, not dishonor

dîne geburt unde dich.
 thy birth and thyself.

9285

ê ichs gevolge, sô stich ich
 before I-it comply, so stab I

rehte in mîn herze ein mezzet ê;
 right into my heart a knife first;

ê sîn wille an mir ergê,
 before his will on me go,

ich nim mir selber ê den lîp.
 I take from-myself self first the life.

- 9290 ern gewinnet niemer wîp
he wins never wife
 noch frouwen an Îsôte,
nor lady in Isolde,
 ern habe mich danne tôte.«
unless-he have me then dead.»
 »nein, schœniu tohter, fürhte niht:
»no, fair daughter, fear not:
 swes er odr ieman hie von giht,
whatever he or anyone here of says,
 9295 daz ist allez samet verlorn;
that is all together lost;
 und hæte es al diu werlt gesworn
and had it all the world sworn
 ern wirdet niemer dîn man.«
he becomes never thy man.»

The Search

XXI

The queen learns by her secret arts that the steward did not kill the dragon. At dawn she rides out with Isolde, Brangaene, and Paranis. They find a horse in foreign harness and the dragon, and scatter to search. The young Isolde sees a helmet gleaming in a bog, and they drag out a knight they think dead. He lives; they find the dragon's tongue on him, and the queen gives him theriac. Coming to, he sees three lights about him, and they know him as Tantris the minstrel.

Und also ez nahten began,

And when it grow-dark began,

diu wîse frâgete unde sprach

the wise asked and spoke

umbe ir tohter ungemach

about her daughter's discomfort

9300

ir tougenlîche liste,

her secret arts,

von den si wunder wiste,

of which she wonders knew,

daz si in ir troume gesach,

that she in her dream saw,

daz ez niht alsô geschach,

that it not so happened,

als der lantschal sagete.

as the land-rumor said.

9305

und iesâ dô ez tagete,

and at-once when it dawned,

si rief Îsôte und sprach ir zuo:

she called Isolde and spoke to-her to:

»â sûeziu tohter, wachestuo?«

»ah sweet daughter, wakest-thou?«

»jâ,« sprach si, »frouwe muoter mîn.«

»yes,« spoke she, »lady mother mine.«

»nu lâ dîn angesten sîn;

»now let thy fears be;

9310

ich wil dir liebiu mære sagen:

I will thee dear tidings tell:

ern hât den trachen niht erslagen;

he has the dragon not slain;

swaz âventiure in her getruoc,

whatever adventure him hither bore,

er ist ein gast, der in dâ sluoc.

he is a stranger, who it there slew.

- 9315 wol ûf, wir suln vil balde dar,
well up, we shall very quickly thither,
 der mære selbe nemen war.
of-the tidings ourselves take heed.
 Brangæne, stant ûf lîse
Brangaene, stand up softly
 und sage uns Paranîse,
and tell us Paranis,
 daz er uns satele schiere:
that he us saddle quickly:
- 9320 wir müezen varn wir viere,
we must fare we four,
 ich und mîn tohter, dû und er;
I and my daughter, thou and he;
 und bringe er uns diu pfert her,
and bring he us the horses hither,
 so ez schiereste müge sîn,
as it soonest may be,
 vür unser hâltürîlîn,
before our secret-little-door,
- 9325 dâ der boumgarte
where the orchard
 hin ze velde wartel!«
thither to field looks!»
 nu diz was allez gereit,
now this was all ready,
 diu rotte saz ûf unde reit
the troop sat up and rode
 des endes, dâ si hôrten sagen,
in-that direction, where they heard say,
- 9330 daz der trache was erslagen.
that the dragon was slain.
 nu sî daz ors funden,
now they the horse found,

daz gereite sî begunden

the harness they began

bemerken unde betrahten

note and consider

und in ir sinnen ahten,

and in their senses weigh,

sin gesæhen nie zÎrlande

they saw never in-Ireland

9335

gereite solher hande,

harness of-such kind,

und kâmen alle dar an,

and came all there on,

swer sô er wære der man,

whoever so he were the man,

den daz ors dar trüege,

whom the horse thither should-carry,

daz der den trachen slüege.

that he the dragon should-slay.

9340

vûrbaz riten si dô zehant

further rode they then at-once

und kâmen ûf den serpent.

and came upon the serpent.

nu was des tiuvels genôz

now was of-the devil peer

als ungehiure und alsô grôz,

so monstrous and so big,

diu lichte frôuwine schar

the bright women's company

9345

daz diu wart also ein tôte var

that it became as a dead-person colored

vor angesten, dôs in ersach.

for fears, when-they it saw.

diu muoter aber zer tohter sprach:

the mother again to-the daughter spoke:

»ei wie sicher ich es bin,

»ah how sure I of-it am,

9350 der truhsæze daz er in

the steward that he it

ie getorste bestân!

ever dared withstand!

wir mugen ez âne sorge lân;

we may it without care leave;

und zwære, tohter Îsôt,

and truly, daughter Isolde,

dirre man sî lebende oder tôt,

this man be living or dead,

9355 mich andet sêre, daz er sî

me forebodes sorely, that he be

verborgen eteswâ hie bî:

hidden somewhere here by:

ez wîssaget mir mîn muot.

it foretells me my spirit.

von dannen, dunket ez dich guot,

from thence, (if)-seems it to-thee good,

sô kêren an die suoche,

so turn to the search,

9360 ob unser got sô ruoche,

if our God so deign,

daz wir in etswâ vinden

that we him somewhere find

und mit im überwinden

and with him overcome

die grundelôsen herzenôt,

the bottomless heart's-distress,

diu uns beswæret alse der tôt.«

which us grieves as the death.«

9365 des berieten sî sich schiere:

of-it agreed they themselves quickly:

die gereisen alle viere

the companions all four

si riten von ein ander sâ,

they rode from one another at-once,

diu suochte hie und disiû dâ.

that-one sought here and this-one there.

Nu ergieng ez, also ez solte

Now went it, as it should

und also der billich wolte,

and as the right would,

diu junge künigîn Îsôt

the young queen Isolde

daz sî ir leben unde ir tôr,

that she her life and her death,

ir wunne unde ir ungemach

her bliss and her discomfort

ze aller êrste gesach.

at-the very first saw.

von sînem helme gieng ein glast,

from his helmet went a gleam,

der vermeldete ir den gast.

it betrayed to-her the stranger.

nu sî des helmes wart gewar,

now she of-the helmet became aware,

si kêrte und rief ir muoter dar:

she turned and called her mother thither:

»frouwe, île, rît her nâher baz,

»lady, hurry, ride hither nearer better,

ich sihe dort glesten, ine weiz waz;

I see there gleaming, I-not know what;

ez ist rehte also ein helm getân,

it is right as a helmet made,

ich wæne in rehte ersehen hân.«

I think it rightly seen have.«

9370

9375

9380

»entriuwen,« sprach diu muoter dô,
»in-truth,« spoke the mother then,

»mich selben dunket ouch alsô.
»me myself seems also so.

9385 got der wil unser ruochen:
God he will of-us care:

ich wæne, den wir suochen,
I think, him-whom we seek,

daz wir den haben funden.«
that we him have found.»

sus riefens an den stunden
thus called-they at the time

den anderen zwein zuo in
the other two to them

9390 und riten alle viere hin.
and rode all four thither.

Nu si ime begunden nâhen
Now they him began approach

und in sô ligen sâhen,
and him so lie saw,

nu wândens alle, er wære tât.
now thought-they all, he were dead.

»er ist tât!« sprach ieweder Îsôt,
»he is dead!« spoke each Isoldé,

9395 »unser gedinge der ist hin.
»our hope it is gone.

der truhsæze der hât in
the steward he has him

mortliche ermordet unde erslagen
murderously murdered and slain

und hât in in diz mos getragen.«
and has him into this bog carried.»

si erbeizten alle viere

they dismounted all four

und heten in vil schiere

and had him very quickly

9400

her ûz gezogen an daz lant.

hither out drawn onto the land.

den helm enstrictens ime zehant

the helmet unlaced-they him at-once

und strichten ime die kuppen dan.

and laced him the coif off.

diu wîse Îsôt diu sach in an

the wise Isolde she looked him at

und sach wol, daz er lebete,

and saw well, that he lived,

9405

und aber sîn leben klebete

and however his life clung

kûme also an einem hâre.

barely as on a hair.

»er lebet,« sprach sî, »zewâre:

»he lives,« spoke she, »truly:

nu balde entwâfenet in!

now quickly disarm him!

ist, daz ich alsô sælic bin,

(if)-is, that I so blessed am,

9410

daz er niht verchwunden hât,

that he not mortally-wounded has,

sô mag es alles werden rât.«

so may it all become remedy.«

die schoenen alle drîe,

the fair all three,

diu liehte companîe,

the bright company,

- 9415 **dô si den ellenden**
when they the exile
mit snêwîzen henden
with snow-white hands
entwâfenen begunden,
disarm began,
die zungen sî dâ funden.
the tongue they there found.
»sich, warte,« sprach diu künigîn,
»see, look,« spoke the queen,
- 9420 **»waz ist diz oder waz mac diz sîn?**
»what is this or what may this be?
Brangæne, höfsche niftel, sprich!«
Brangaene, courtly niece, speak!«
»ez ist ein zunge, dunket mich.«
»it is a tongue, seems to-me.«
»du sprichest wâr, Brangæne:
»thou speakest truth, Brangaene:
mich dunket unde ich wæne,
me seems and I think,
- 9425 **sô was ouch sî des trachen:**
so was also it of-the dragon:
unser sælde diu wil wachen.
our fortune it will wake.
herzetohter, schœne Îsôt,
heart's-daughter, fair Isolde,
ich weiz ez als mînen tôt,
I know it as my death,
wir sîn zer rehten verte komen:
we are to-the right track come:
- 9430 **diu zunge hât ouch ime benomen**
the tongue has also him taken
beidiu kraft unde sin.«
both might and sense.«

hie mite entwâfentens in

here with disarmed-they him

und dôs an ime niht funden

and when-they on him nothing found

weder slege noch wunden,

neither blows nor wounds,

dô wârens alle samet frô.

then were-they all together glad.

9435

drîakel nam diu wîse dô

theriac took the wise then

diu listige künigîn

the artful queen

und flôzte im der alsô vil in,

and poured him of-it so much in,

biz daz er switzen began.

until that he sweat began.

»er wil genesen,« sprach sî, »der man,

»he will survive,« spoke she, »the man,

9440

der tampf gerûmet schiere hie,

the fume vacates quickly here,

der von der zungen an in gie,

which from the tongue on him went,

sô mag er sprechen unde ûf sehen.«

so may he speak and up look.«

daz was ouch schiere geschehen:

that was also quickly happened:

er lag unlange, unz ez geschach,

he lay not-long, until it happened,

9445

daz er beidiu ûf und umbe sach.

that he both up and about looked.

Nu er der sæligen schar

Now he of-the blessed company

bi ime und umbe in wart gewar,

by him and about him became aware,

er gedâhte in sînem muote:

he thought in his spirit:

9450 »â hêrre got der guote,

»ah lord God the good,

dû hâst mîn unvergezzen.

thou hast of-me not-forgotten.

mich hânt driu licht besezzen,

me have three lights besieged,

diu besten, die diu werlt hât,

the best, which the world has,

maneges herzen fröude und rât

many-a heart's joy and counsel

9455 und maneges ougen wunne:

and many-a eye's bliss:

Îsôt, diu liehte sunne,

Isolde, the bright sun,

und ouch ir muoter Îsôt,

and also her mother Isolde,

daz frôliche morgenrôt,

the joyful morning-red,

diu stolze Brangæne,

the proud Brangaene,

9460 daz schœne volmæne.«

the fair full-moon.«

hie mite genante er unde sprach

here with ventured he and spoke

kûme unde kûmeclîchen: »ach,

barely and scarcely: »ah,

wer sît ir unde wâ bin ich?«

who are you and where am I?«

»â ritter, mahtu sprechen? sprich!

»ah knight, canst-thou speak? speak!

9465 wir helfen dir ze dirre nôt!«

we help thee in this distress!«

sprach aber diu sinnerîche Îsôt.

spoke again the clever Isolde.

»jâ, süeziu frouwe, sælic wîp,

»yes, sweet lady, blessed woman,

und ich enweiz, wie mir der lîp

and I not-know, how to-me the body

und al mîn kraft in kurzer frist

and all my might in short time

geswachet unde geswichen ist.«

weakened and failed is.«

diu junge Îsôt diu sach in an:

the young Isolde she looked him at:

»diz ist Tantris der spilman,«

»this is Tantris the minstrel,«

sprach sî, »ob ich in ie gesach.«

spoke she, »if I him ever saw.«

der anderen ietwederiu sprach:

of-the others each spoke:

»uns dunket ouch entriuwen sô.«

»us seems also in-truth so.«

diu wîse diu sprach aber dô:

the wise she spoke again then:

»bistuz Tantris?« »frouwe, jâ.«

»art-thou-it Tantris?« »lady, yes.«

»sage an,« sprach aber diu wîse sâ,

»say on,« spoke again the wise at-once,

»wâ bistû her komen oder wie

»where art-thou hither come or how

oder waz wirbestu hie?«

or what seekest-thou here?«

»sæligest aller wîbe,

»most-blessed of-all women,

9470

9475

9480

ine hân ez an dem lîbe

I have it in the body

noch leider an der krefte niht,

nor alas in the strength not,

daz ich iu mîne geschiht

that I you my event

9485 bescheidenlîche mûge gesagen.

distinctly may tell.

heizet mich fûeren oder tragen

bid me lead or carry

durch gotes willen eteswar,

for God's will somewhere,

dâ mîn ieman neme war

where of-me anyone take heed

doch disen tac und dise naht.

yet this day and this night.

9490 und kume ich wider ze mîner maht,

and (if)-come I back to my strength,

so ist reht, daz ich tuo unde sage,

so is right, that I do and say,

swaz iu gelîche und iu behage.«

whatever you please and you suit.«

Tantris Again

XXII

They bring him secretly into the palace with his armor and the tongue. Questioned by the queen, he says he is a merchant who killed the dragon to win the land's favor. She promises him safety and asks his help against the steward, and he vows to fight for her. At the harbor his men hear no word of him; Kurvenal finds the dead horse and the dragon but no trace of his lord, and laments. The twenty barons, secretly glad, want to sail at once; the others persuade them to wait two more days.

Sus nâmen sî Tristanden

Thus took they Tristan

si viere ze handen,

they four to hands,

ûf ein phert huobens in

onto a horse lifted-they him

9495

und under in fuortens in hin

and among them led-they him thither

und brâhtens in sô heinlîch in

and brought-they him so secretly in

wider durch ir hâltûrlîn,

back through their secret-little-door,

daz umbe ir reise und umbe ir vart

that about their journey and about their course

nie nieman nihtes innen wart.

never no-one of-anything aware became.

9500

dâ schuofens im helfe unde gemach.

there made-they him help and comfort.

die zungen, als ich ê dâ sprach,

the tongue, as I before there spoke,

sîn îsen und sîn ander dinc

his iron and his other things

des enbleip dâ weder vaden noch rinc,

of-it remained there neither thread nor ring,

9505 si fuortens allez mit in dan,
they carried-it all with them thence,

beidiu harnasch unde man.
both harness and man.

Nu daz der ander tac dô kam,
Now that the other day then came,

diu wîse in aber ze handen nam:
the wise him again to hands took:

»nu Tantris,« sprach si, »sage mir
»now Tantris,« spoke she, »tell me

9510 bî den genâden, alse ich dir
by the mercies, as I thee

nu unde ê mâles hân getân,
now and before times have done,

daz ich dich zwirnt erneret hân
that I thee twice saved have

und bin dir willic unde holt,
and am to-thee willing and kind,

und als du dînem wîbe solt,
and as thou to-thy wife shalt,

9515 wenne kâme dû in Îrlant?
when camest thou into Ireland?

wie slüege dû den serpent?«
how slewest thou the serpent?«

»frouwe, daz wil ich iu sagen:
»lady, that will I you tell:

ich kam in disen kurzen tagen,
I came in these short days,

ez sint drî tage von hiute,
it are three days from today,

9520 ich und ander koufliute
I and other merchants

mit einem kiel in dise habe;
with a keel into this harbor;

dô kam ein roupher hinnen abe,
then came a robber-band hence down,

ine weiz, durch welhe geschiht,
I-not know, through what event,

die wolten uns, hæte ich ez niht
they would us, had I it not

mit mînem guote underkomen,
with my goods prevented, 9525

den lîp zem guote hân genomen.
the life with-the goods have taken.

nu ist ez uns alsô gewant,
now is it to-us so turned,

wir müezen dicke fremediû lant
we must often foreign lands

heinlîchen unde bûwen
frequent and dwell-in

und enwizzen, wem getrûwen,
and not-know, whom trust, 9530

wan man uns vil gewaltes tuot.
for one us much of-violence does.

sô weiz ich wol, mir wære guot,
so know I well, to-me would-be good,

mit swelher slahte dingen
with whatever kind things

ichz dâ zuo möhte bringen,
I-it there to could bring,

daz mich diu lant erkanden.
that me the lands should-know. 9535

künde in fremeden landen
acquaintance in strange lands

diu rîchet den koufman.
it enriches the merchant.

seht, frouwe, dâ gedâhte ich an,
see, lady, there thought I on,

- wan mir ist umbe den serpent
for to-me is about the serpent
- 9540 daz lantmære lange erkant,
the land-tale long known,
 und sluog in niuwan umbe daz:
and slew it only for that:
 ich wæne, daz ich deste baz
I think, that I the better
 fride unde genåde vinde
peace and mercy find
 bi disem lantgesinde.«
by this land-folk.»
- 9545 »fride unde genåde,« sprach Îsôt,
»peace and mercy,« spoke Isolde,
 »die müezen dich an dînen tôt
»they may thee to thy death
 mit wernden êren bringen!
with lasting honors bring!
 du bist ze guoten dingen
thou art to good things
 dir selben unde uns komen her.
to-thee self and to-us come hither.
- 9550 nu trahte, wes dîn herze ger,
now consider, of-what thy heart desire,
 daz ist getân, daz schaffe ich dir
that is done, that make I thee
 von mînem hêrren und von mir.«
from my lord and from me.»
 »gnåde, frouwe, sô ergib ich
»thanks, lady, so give I
 mînen kiel unde mich
my keel and myself
- 9555 vil verre an iuwer triuwe.
very far into your faithfulness.

seht, daz mich iht geriuwe,
see, that me anything rue,

daz ich iu guot unde leben
that I you goods and life

an iuwer triuwe hân gegeben.«
into your faithfulness have given.»

»nein zwâre, Tantris, ez entuot,
»no truly, Tantris, it not-does,

umbe dîn leben und umbe dîn guot
about thy life and about thy goods

9560

ensorge nû niht mêre.
worry now not more.

mîne triuwe und mîn êre
my faithfulness and my honor

sê hie, die nim in dîne hant,
see here, them take into thy hand,

daz dir niemer ze Îrlant
that to-thee never in Ireland

bî mînem lebene leit geschiht.
by my life sorrow happens.

9565

entwer mich einer bete niht
refuse me a request not

und biut mir eteslîchen rât
and offer me some counsel

umbe eine sache, an der nu stât
about a matter, on which now stands

mîn êre und al mîn sælekeit.«
my honor and all my blessedness.»

und seite im alse ich hân geseit,
and told him as I have told,

9570

wes sich der truhsæze
of-what himself the steward

umbe dise tât vermæze:
about this deed should-presume:

wie sêre und wie genôte

how sorely and how closely

er spræche nâch Îsôte;

he should-speak after Isolde;

9575 und wie er den valsch und die lüge

and how he the falsehood and the lie

ze offenlîchem kampfē zûge:

to open combat should-draw:

ob ieman über in kæme,

if anyone over him should-come,

der sich ez an genæme.

who himself it on should-take.

»sæligiu frouwe,« sprach Tristan,

»blessed lady,« spoke Tristan,

9580 »hie enhabet keine sorge van:

»here have no care thereof:

ir habet mir zwirnt lîp unde leben

you have me twice body and life

mit gotes helfe wider gegeben,

with God's help back given,

diu suln ouch iu ze rehte

they shall also you by right

beidiu ze dirre vehte

both for this fight

9585 und zallen nœten bestân,

and at-all needs stand-by,

die wîle ich sî gesunde hân.«

the while I them healthy have.«

»got lône dir, lieber Tantris:

»God reward thee, dear Tantris:

des bin ich gerne an dir gewis,

of-it am I gladly in thee certain,

und wil dir ouch des wol verjehen;

and will thee also of-it well avow;

ist, daz diz wunder sol geschehen, 9590
(if)-is, that this wonder shall happen,

sô sîn wir beide, ich unde Îsôt,
so are we both, I and Isolde,

iemer mit lebendem lîbe tât.«
ever with living body dead.»

»nein, frouwe, tuot die rede hin:
»no, lady, put the speech away:

sît ich in iuerm fride bin
since I in your peace am

und mînen lîp und swaz ich hân 9595
and my body and whatever I have

an iuwer êre hân verlân
on your honor have left

und dar an sicher wesen sol,
and there on secure be shall,

trût frouwe, sô gehabet iuch wol!
dear lady, so bear yourself well!

helfet mir ze lîbe wider,
help me to body back,

ich gelege ez allez eine nider. 9600
I lay it all alone down.

und saget mir, frouwe, ist iu bekant:
and tell me, lady, is to-you known:

die zungen, die man bî mir vant,
the tongue, which one by me found,

beleip diu oder war tete man die?«
remained it or where put one it?«

»entriuwen, nein, ich hân si hie
»in-truth, no, I have it here

und allez, daz du haben solt: 9605
and all, that thou have shalt:

mîn schoeniu tochter selbe, Îsolt,
my fair daughter herself, Isolde,

und ich, wir brâhtenz allez dan.«

and I, we brought-it all thence.«

»diz kumt uns rehte,« sprach Tristan;

»this comes us right,« spoke Tristan;

»nu sæligiu künigîn,

»now blessed queen,

9610 lât aller slahte sorge sîn

let all kind care be

und râtet mir ze mîner kraft,

and help me to my strength,

sô ist ez allez endehaft.«

so is it all concluded.«

Die küniginne beide

The queens both

beide âne underscheide

both without difference

9615 si nâmen in ze handen

they took him to hands

und swaz si beide erkanden,

and whatever they both knew,

daz ime ze heile und ze fromen

that him to healing and to benefit

an sînem lîbe mohte komen,

in his body could come,

daz was ir meiste unmüezekeit.

that was their greatest occupation.

9620 hier under hete michel leit

here under had great sorrow

sîn kiel und sîn geselleschaft;

his keel and his company;

der was genuoc als angesthaft,

of-it was enough so fearful,

daz si ungenesen wânden wesen:

that they unsaved thought be:

ir keiner trûwete genesen,

of-them none trusted survive,

wan si innerhalp den zwein tagen

for they within the two days

9625

nie niht von ime gehôrten sagen.

never anything from him heard say.

ouch heten sî den schal vernomen,

also had they the clamor heard,

der von dem trachen ûz was komen;

which from the dragon out was come;

und was des mæres vil getriben,

and was of-the tidings much driven,

dâ wære ein ritter tôten beliben,

there were a knight dead remained,

9630

des ors daz lâge halbez dâ.

whose horse that should-lie half there.

nu dâhten ouch die sîne sâ:

now thought also those his at-once:

»wer wære daz niwan Tristan?

»who were that but Tristan?

dane ist binamen kein zwîvel an,

there is truly no doubt on,

hætz im der tôten niht benomen,

had-it him the death not taken,

9635

er wære sît her wider komen.«

he would-be since hither back come.«

hie mite gerietens under in

here with advised-they among them

und santen Kurvenâlen hin,

and sent Kurvenal thither,

daz er des orses næme war.

that he of-the horse should-take heed.

daz tete er: Kurvenal reit dar.

that did he: Kurvenal rode thither.

9640

er vant daz ors und erkande daz.

he found the horse and recognized it.

nu reit er aber vürbaz:

now rode he again further:

den trachen vant er ouch zehant

the dragon found he also at-once

und alse er dô niht mêre vant

and when he then not more found

9645 von keinen sînen dingen

of any his things

an gewande noch an ringen,

in garment nor in rings,

dô kam in michel zwîvel an:

then came him great doubt on:

»â,« dâhte er, »hêrre Tristan,

»ab,« thought he, »lord Tristan,

weder bistu lebende oder tôt?

whether art-thou living or dead?

9650 owê owî«, sprach er, »Îsôt,

alas alas, spoke he, »Isolde,

owî, daz dîn lob und dîn nam

alas, that thy praise and thy name

ie hin ze Kurnewâle kam,

ever thither to Cornwall came,

was dîn schœne und dîn edelkeit

was thy beauty and thy nobility

ze solhem schaden ûf geleit

to such harm up laid

9655 einer der sæligesten art,

of-one of-the most-blessed kind,

diu ie mit sper versigelt wart,

which ever with spear sealed was,

der dû ze wol geviele!«

whom thou too well pleasedst!«

sus kêrte er wider zem kiele

thus turned he back to-the keel

weinende unde klagende,

weeping and lamenting,

diu mære wider sagende,

the tidings back telling,

9660

als er si hete ervunden.

as he them had found.

diu mære begunden

the tidings began

genuogen missevalen

to-many displease

und iedoch niht in allen:

and yet not to-them all:

daz selbe swære mære

the same heavy tidings

9665

was niht ir aller swære;

was not of-them all grief;

genuoge ez wol vertruogen.

many it well endured.

ouch sach man an genuogen,

also saw one in many,

daz ez in grôze riuwe bar,

that it them great sorrow bore,

und was ouch der diu meiste schar.

and was also of-those the greatest company.

9670

sus was ir wille unde ir muot

thus was their will and their spirit

undersniten übel und guot.

interlaced ill and good.

mit disem wehsele geviel

with this exchange fell

der gezweiete kiel

the divided keel

9675 an sprâchen unde an rûnen.

to parleys and to whisperings.

den zweinzic barûnen

the twenty barons

den was niht inneclîche leit

to-them was not inwardly grievous

der zwîvel, der in was geseit;

the doubt, which to-them was told;

si wânden dannen komen dermite.

they thought thence come therewith.

9680 und daz man sîn niht langer bite,

and that one of-him not longer should-wait,

des bâtens al gemeine,

of-it asked-they all in-common,

die zweinzic meine ich eine;

the twenty mean I only;

si rieten alle dar an,

they advised all there on,

daz man des nahtes füere dan.

that one by night should-fare thence.

9685 sô rieten aber ander daz,

so advised however others that,

daz sî beliben unde baz

that they should-remain and better

erfüeren diu mære,

should-learn the tidings,

wie ez ime ergangen wære.

how it him gone were.

alsus zehullens under in:

thus disagreed-they among them:

dise wolten gerne hin,
these would gladly thither,

9690

jene wolten dâ bestân.
those would there stay.

sus wart ez dô dar an verlân,
thus was it then there on left,

sît daz sîn tôht niht wære
since that his death not were

gewis noch offenbære,
certain nor evident,

daz sî dâ langer beliben,
that they there longer should-remain,

9695

ir vorsche unde ir frâge triben
their inquiry and their question should-drive

zem minnesten doch zwêne tage:
at-the least yet two days:

daz was der barûne klage.
that was of-the barons lament.

The Steward's Claim

XXIII

Gurmun holds his court at Weisefort and takes counsel with the queen, who tells him that the steward did not kill the dragon and that she knows who did. Before the barons the steward shows the head and claims the king's oath. The queen, speaking for the king, calls it an unearned reward; the young Isolde says she will never be sold so cheaply. The steward answers with a long complaint that women love what hates them and hate what loves them, and he insists the oath be kept.

Hie mite sô was ouch der tac komen,
Here with so was also the day come,

der ze Weiseforte was genomen,
which at Weisefort was taken,

9700

dar Gurmûn hete getaget

where Gurmûn had summoned

umbe sîne tohter die maget

about his daughter the maiden

und umbe den truhsæzen.

and about the steward.

Gurmûnes umbesæzen,

Gurmûn's neighbors,

9705 sîne man und sîne mâge,

his men and his kinsmen,

als er si durch râtfrâge

as he them for counsel

ze sînem tage hete besant,

to his day had summoned,

die wâren alle dâ zehant.

they were all there at-once.

die nam ouch er besunder

them took also he apart

9710 und suochte rât hier under

and sought counsel here under

sô verre und alsô sêre,

so far and so sorely,

als dem ez umbe sîn êre

as one-to-whom it about his honor

und ouch niht anders enstât.

and also not otherwise stands.

dar zuo besande er an den rât

there to summoned he to the council

9715 sîn liebez wîp die künigîn

his dear wife the queen

si mohte im ouch wol lieb sîn,

she might him also well dear be,

wan er hete an ir einer dô
for he had in her alone then

sunderlicher sælde zwô
of-special fortune two

der allerbesten, die der man
of-the very-best, which the man

an liebem wîbe vinden kan:
in dear wife find can:

9720

schœne unde wîsheit,
beauty and wisdom,

der was der mâze an sî geleit,
of-them was of-the measure on her laid,

daz si ime wol mohte lieb sîn.
that she him well might dear be.

diu sælige künigîn,
the blessed queen,

diu schœne wîse was ouch dâ.
the fair wise-one was also there.

9725

ir friunt, der künic, nam si sâ
her friend, the king, took her at-once

von dem râte dort hin dan:
from the council there thither off:

»wie râtestû,« sprach er, »sag an:
»how advisest-thou,« spoke he, »say on:

mir ist disiu rede swære alse der tôt.«
to-me is this speech heavy as the death.«

»gehabet iuch wol,« sprach aber Îsôt,
»bear yourself well,« spoke again Isolde,

9730

»wir suln uns wol hier an bewarn:
»we shall ourselves well here on guard:

ich hân ez allez undervarn.«
I have it all searched-out.«

»wie? herzfrouwe, sage ouch mir,
»how? heart's-lady, tell also me,

sô fröuwe ich mich der rede mit dir.«

so rejoice I myself of-the speech with thee.«

9735 »unser truhsæze, als er dô giht,

»our steward, as he then avows,

seht, der ensluoc des trachen niht,

see, he slew the dragon not,

und der in sluoc, den weiz ich wol:

and who it slew, him know I well:

daz bewære ich, swenne ich sol.

that prove I, whenever I shall.

al iuwer angest leget nider.

all your fear lay down.

9740 gât balde ziuwerm râte wider:

go quickly to-your council back:

saget in allen unde jeht,

tell them all and declare,

als ir gehœret unde geseht

as you hear and see

des truhsæzen wârheit,

the steward's truth,

ir læset gerne iuvern eit,

you redeem gladly your oath,

9745 den ir dem lande habet getân.

which you to-the land have done.

heizet si alle mit iu gân

bid them all with you go

und sitzet anz gerihte.

and sit at-the court.

enfürhtet iu ze nihte.

fear yourself at nothing.

lât den truhsæzen klagen

let the steward accuse

9750 und sagen, swaz er welle sagen;

and say, whatever he will say;

und alse ez danne zît sî,
and when it then time be,

sô bin ich unde Îsôt dâ bî:
so am I and Isolde there by:

so gebietet mir ez, sô sprich ich
so command me it, so speak I

vür iuch, vür Îsôt und vür mich.
for you, for Isolde and for me.

hie mite lât die rede stân:
here with let the speech stand:

9755

ich wil nâch mîner tochter gân,
I will after my daughter go,

und komen ouch iesâ wider wir zwô.«
and come also at-once back we two.»

nâch ir tochter gie si dô.
after her daughter went she then.

der künec gienc in den palas wider:
the king went into the palace back:

an daz gerihte saz er nider
at the court sat he down

9760

und mit im vil barûne,
and with him many barons,

des landes cumpanjûne.
the land's companions.

dâ was schoeniu ritterschaft,
there was fair knightood,

von ritterschefte michel kraft,
of knightood great force,

niht durch des küneges êre
not for the king's honor

9765

sô starke noch sô sêre,
so strongly nor so sorely,

so daz si gerne wolten sehen,
so that they gladly would see,

waz dâ solte geschehen

what there should happen

ûz disem lantschalle:

out-of this land-rumor:

9770 des wundertes alle.

of-it wondered-them all.

Die sæligen Îsôte zwô

The blessed Isoldes two

nu daz si mit ein ander dô

now that they with one another then

zem palas in giengen,

to-the palace in went,

si gruozten unde enpfiegen

they greeted and received

9775 die hêrren al besunder.

the lords all apart.

hie mitten unde hier under

here amid and here under

wart vil gesprochen unde gedâht,

was much spoken and thought,

rede unde gedanke vil vür brâht

speech and thoughts much forth brought

von ir beider sælekeit

of their of-both blessedness

9780 und iedoch mêre geseit

and yet more said

von des truhsæzen linge

of the steward's success

danne von der frouwen dinge.

than of the ladies' affairs.

si sprâchen unde gedâhten dar:

they spoke and thought thereon:

»nu kieset alle, nemet war,

»now perceive all, take heed,

wirt disem unsæligen man,
(if)-becomes to-this unblessed man,

9785

der nie sælde gewan,
who never fortune gained,

disiu sælige maget,
this blessed maiden,

sô ist im al diu sælde ertaget,
so is to-him all the fortune dawned,

diu ime oder dekeinem man
which to-him or any man

an einer maget ertagen kan.«
in a maiden dawn can.»

9790

Sus kâmen sî zem kûnege hin.
Thus came they to-the king thither.

der kûnec stuont ûf engegen in.
the king stood up toward them.

lieplîche sazte er sî ze sich:
lovingly set he them to himself:

»nu,« sprach der kûnec, »truhsæze, sprich!
»now,« spoke the king, »steward, speak!

waz ist dîn bete und dîn ger?«
what is thy request and thy desire?»

9795

»vil gerne, hêrre kûnec,« sprach er.
»very gladly, lord king,« spoke he.

»hêrre ich ger unde bite,
»lord I desire and ask,

daz ir dem lande kûneges site
that you to-the land king's custom

niemer zebrechet an mir.
never break in me.

9800 welt ir es jehen, sô sprâchet ir
(if)-will you of-it avow, so spoke you

und lobetet es ouch beide
and vowed it also both

mit rede und mit dem eide:
with speech and with the oath:

swelch ritter disen serpent
whatever knight this serpent

slüege mit sîn eines hant,
should-slay with his one hand,

9805 ir gæbet ime ze solde
you should-give him as pay

iuwer tohter Îsolde.
your daughter Isolde.

der eit verlôs vil manegen man;
the oath lost very many-a man;

dâ sach aber ich vil lützel an,
there looked however I very little on,

durch daz ich minnete daz wîp,
because that I loved the woman,

9810 unde wâgete den lîp
and risked the body

dicke engestlîcher danne ie man,
often more-frightfully than ever man,

biz mir ze jungeste dar an
until to-me at-the last there on

alsô gelanc, daz ich in sluoc.
so succeeded, that I it slew.

ist ez dâ mite genuoc,
(if)-is it there with enough,

9815 hie lît daz houbet, seht ez an:
here lies the head, see it on:

daz selbe urkünde brâhte ich dan.
that same proof brought I thence.

nu læset iuwer wârheit:

now redeem your truth:

küneges wort und küneges eit

king's word and king's oath

die suln wâr unde bewæret sîn.«

they shall true and proven be.»

»truhsæze,« sprach diu künigîn,

»steward,« spoke the queen,

9820

»der alsô rîchlîchen solt,

»who so rich pay,

als mîn tohter ist, Îsolt,

as my daughter is, Isolde,

ungedienet haben wil,

unearned have will,

entriuwen, des ist alze vil.«

in-truth, of-it is all-too much.»

»ei,« sprach der truhsæze dô,

»ah,« spoke the steward then,

9825

»frouwe, ir tuot übel, wie redet ir sô?

»lady, you do ill, how speak you so?

mîn hêrre, der ez enden sol,

my lord, who it end shall,

der kan doch selbe sprechen wol:

he can yet himself speak well:

der spreche unde antwûrte mir.«

he speak and answer me.»

der künec sprach: »frouwe, sprecht ir

the king spoke: »lady, speak you

9830

vür iuch, vür Îsôt und vür mich.«

for you, for Isolde and for me.»

»genâde, hêrre, daz tuon ich.«

»thanks, lord, that do I.»

aber sprach diu küniginne:

again spoke the queen:

»truhsæze, dīne minne

»steward, thy love

9835 die sint lûter unde guot

they are clear and good

und hâst sô manlichen muot:

and hast so manly spirit:

du bist wol guotes wîbes wert.

thou art well of-good woman worthy.

swer aber sô hôhes lônnes gert,

whoever however so high reward desires,

dâ er sîn niht verdienet hât,

where he it not deserved has,

9840 entriuwen, deist ein missetât.

in-truth, that-is a misdeed.

du hâst dir selben ûf geleit

thou hast to-thyself self up laid

eine tât und eine manheit,

a deed and a manhood,

der dû mitalle unschuldic bist,

of-which thou altogether innocent art,

als ez mir zuo gerûnet ist.«

as it to-me to whispered is.«

9845 »frouwe, ir redet, ine weiz wie:

»lady, you speak, I-not know how:

ich hân doch diz wortzeichen hie.«

I have yet this token here.«

»sô hâst du brâht ein houbet dan:

»so hast thou brought a head thence:

daz bræhte ouch lihte ein ander man,

that would-bring also easily an other man,

ich meine, ob er Îsolde

I mean, if he Isolde

9850 dermite verdienen solde,

therewith deserve should,

sine wirt aber gewonnen niht
she becomes however won not

mit alsô kleiner geschiht.«
with so small event.«

»nein zwâre,« sprach diu junge Îsôt,
»no truly,« spoke the young Isolde,

»durch alsô mæzlîche nôt
»for so moderate need

enwil ich niemer veile sîn.«
will I never for-sale be.«

»âhî, frou junge künigîn,«
»ah, lady young queen,«

sprach aber der truhsæze dô,
spoke again the steward then,

»daz ir ze mînen dingen sô
»that you to my affairs so

mit arge sprechende sît
with malice speaking are

der nôt, der ich ze maneger zît
of-the distress, which I at many time

durch iuwer minne erliten hân!«
for your love suffered have!«

»daz sol ze guoten staten gestân,
»that shall to good aid stand,

daz ir mich minnet,« sprach Îsolt,
that you me love,« spoke Isolde,

»ine wart iu nie getriu noch holt
»I became to-you never faithful nor kind

noch zwâre niemer werden sol.«
nor truly never become shall.«

»jâ,« sprach der ander, »ich weiz wol,
»yes,« spoke the other, »I know well,

ir tuot vil rehte als elliu wîp;
you do very right as all women;

9855

9860

9865

ir sît alle alsô gelîp,

you are all so alike,

alsô geartet unde gemuot,

so natured and minded,

9870 iuch dunket ie daz arge guot,

to-you seems ever the bad good,

daz guote dunket iuch ie arc:

the good seems to-you ever bad:

diu art ist an iu allen starc.

the nature is in you all strong.

ir sît verkêret alle wîs,

you are perverse all ways,

iu sint die tumben alle wîs,

to-you are the foolish all wise,

9875 iu sint die wîsen alle tump,

to-you are the wise all foolish,

ir machet ûz dem slehten krump

you make out-of the straight crooked

und ûz dem krumben wider sleht;

and out-of the crooked back straight;

ir habet allen ungereht

you have all unjust

an iuwer seil gevazzet:

into your rope caught:

9880 ir minnet, daz iuch hazzet,

you love, what you hates,

ir hazzet, daz iuch minnet.

you hate, what you loves.

wie sît ir sus gesinnet,

how are you thus minded,

wie minnet ir sô harte

how love you so hard

der dinge widerwarte,

of-the things contrary,

daz man der sô vil an iu siht!

that one of-them so much in you sees!

9885

der iuch dâ wil, desn welt ir niht

who you there wants, of-him want you not

und welt den, der iuch niht enwil.

and want him, who you not wants.

ir sît daz irresameste spil,

you are the most-confusing game,

daz ieman ûf dem brete kan.

which anyone on the board can.

er ist ein sinnelôser man,

he is a senseless man,

9890

der âne bürgen durch daz wîp

who without surety for the woman

iemer geveilet den lîp;

ever sells the body;

und zwâre iedoch dar umbe niht,

and truly yet there about not,

swes ir jeht oder mîn frouwe giht,

whatever you avow or my lady says,

ez wirt al anders ûf geleit,

it becomes all otherwise up laid,

9895

oder man brichet mir den eit.«

or one breaks me the oath.«

The Queen's Answer

XXIV

The queen turns his speech back on him: he has learned the ladies' ways too well and should love what loves him; Isolde does not want him, as her mother never did. When she says another man killed the dragon, the steward offers to fight anyone who says so, and she undertakes to produce the champion on the third day, with pledges on both sides. Isolde secretly studies the bealed minstrel, marveling that so fine a man should wander without a kingdom; the queen tells the king of the merchant.

Aber sprach diu küniginne:

Again spoke the queen:

»truhsæze, dîne sinne

»steward, thy senses

die sint starc unde spæhe,

they are strong and subtle,

9900 der spæhe an sinnen sæhe;

who subtlety in senses should-see;

si habent dem gelîchen schîn,

they have to-it like appearance,

als sî ze kemenâten sîn

as they in chambers be

in der frouwen tougenheit bedâht.

in the ladies' secrecy conceived.

dâ zuo hâst dû si vür brâht

there to hast thou them forth brought

9905 rehte alse ein frouwen ritter sol.

right as a ladies' knight shall.

du weist der frouwen art ze wol:

thou knowest the ladies' nature too well:

du bist dar î n ze verre komen,

thou art there into too far come,

ez hât dir der manne art benomen.

it has thee the men's nature taken.

du minnest ouch ze harte

thou lovest also too hard

der dinge widerwarte.

of-the things contrary.

9910

mich dunket, dir ist ouch wol dermite:

me seems, to-thee is also well therewith:

du hâst die selben frouwen site

thou hast the same ladies' manner

sêre an dîn seil gevazzet:

sorely into thy rope caught:

du minnest, daz dich hazzet,

thou lovest, what thee hates,

du wilt, daz dîn niht enwil:

thou wilt, what thee not wants:

9915

diz ist doch unser frouwen spil;

this is yet our ladies' game;

wes nimestu dich hie mite an?

of-what takest-thou thyself here with on?

sô dir got, du bist ein man,

so-help thee God, thou art a man,

lâz uns unser frouwen art!

leave us our ladies' nature!

dune bist niht wol dermite bewart.

thou art not well therewith provided.

9920

habe dîne mannes sinne

have thy man's senses

und minne, daz dich minne;

and love, what thee loves;

welle, daz dich welle:

want, what thee wants:

daz spil hât guot gevelle!

that game has good fall!

du sagest uns ie genôte,

thou tellest us ever urgently,

9925

du wellest Îsôte,

thou wouldst Isolde,

und sî enwelle dîn niht.

and she wants thee not.

daz ist ir art: wer mac des iht?

that is her nature: who may of-it anything?

si lât der dinge vil hin gân,

she lets of-the things much thither go,

9930 der sî doch vil wol möhte hân.

which she yet very well might have.

ir ist der vil unmære,

to-her is of-them much indifferent,

dem sî doch vil lieb wære,

to-whom she yet very dear were,

der dû ze hant der êrste bist.

of-whom thou at hand the first art.

daz selbe ir von mir gartet ist:

that same to-her from me inherited is:

9935 ich selbe enwart dir ouch nie holt.

I myself became to-tee also never kind.

ich weiz wol, alsam tuot Îsolt:

I know well, likewise does Isolde:

ez ist ir gartet von mir.

it is to-her inherited from me.

du verliusest michel minne an ir.

thou lovest much love on her.

diu schœne, diu reine,

the fair, the pure,

9940 si wære ze gemeine,

she would-be too common,

ob si iegelichen solte

if she each should

wellen, der si wolte.

want, who her wanted.

truhsæze, als du hâst geseit,
steward, as thou hast said,

mîn hêrre der sol sînen eit
my lord he shall his oath

vil gerne an dir bewæren.
very gladly on thee prove.

9945

sich, daz du dînen mæren
see, that thou with-thy tales

und dîner rede sô mite gâst,
and with-thy speech so with goest,

daz dûs iht under wegen lâst:
that thou-it at-all under ways leavest:

volge dînen sachen!
follow thy affairs!

ich hœre sagen, den trachen
I hear say, the dragon

9950

den habe ein ander man erslâen:
it have an other man slain:

sich, waz du dâ zuo wellest sagen.«
see, what thou there to wilt say.»

»wer wære der?« »ich weiz in wol
»who were he?« »I know him well

und wil in bringen, swenne ich sol.«
and will him bring, whenever I shall.»

»frouwe, ez enist kein man,
»lady, it is no man,

9955

der sich hier umbe iht nimet an
who himself here about at-all takes on

und mich von mînen êren
and me from my honors

mit valsche wænet kêren,
with falsehood thinks turn,

der mir state und reht wil geben,
who me chance and right will give,

9960 dane sî mîn lîp umbe und mîn leben
there-not be my body for and my life

gewâget unde geveilet,
risked and sold,

swie mir der hof erteilet,
however to-me the court judges,

hant wider hende,
hand against hands,

ê ich den fuoz gewende!«
before I the foot turn!»

9965 »diz lobe ich,« sprach diu künigîn,
»this vow I,« spoke the queen,

»und wil des selbe bürge sîn,
»and will of-it myself surety be,

daz ich dich diser rede gewer
that I thee of-this speech grant

und dirn ze kampf bringe her
and to-thee-him to combat bring hither

von hiute unz an den dritten tac,
from today until to the third day,

9970 wande ich iezuo enmac,
for I now not-can,

den selben, der den trachen sluoc.«
the same, who the dragon slew.»

der künic sprach: »des ist genuoc.«
the king spoke: »of-it is enough.»

ouch sprâchen al die hêrren dô:
also spoke all the lords then:

»truhsæze, es ist genuoc alsô;
»steward, it is enough so;

9975 diz ist ein kurzlîchiu bite:
this is a short delay:

gâ dar, bestæte den kampf hie mite
go thither, confirm the combat here with

und tuo mîn frouwe selbe alsam.«
and do my lady herself likewise.«

der künec dô von in beiden nam
the king then from them both took

triuwe und gewisse gîselschaft,
faithfulness and certain hostage-pledge,

daz dirre kampf endehaft
that this combat binding

9980

des dritten tages wære.
of-the third day were.

hie mite zergie diz mære.
here with dispersed this tale.

Die frouwen giengen beide dan
The ladies went both thence

und nâmen aber ir spilman
and took again their minstrel

in ir flîz und in ir pflege.
into their diligence and into their care.

9985

ir beider flîz was alle wege
of-them of-both diligence was all ways

mit süezer bedæhtekeit
with sweet thoughtfulness

niuwan an diu dinc geleit,
only on the things laid,

diu sîn helfe solten wesen.
which his help should be.

ouch was er iezuo wol genesen,
also was he now well healed,

9990

lieht an dem lîbe und schoene var.
bright in the body and fair colored.

nu nam Îsôt sîn dicke war

now took Isolde of-him often heed

und marcte in ûz der mâze

and marked him beyond the measure

an lîbe und an gelâze:

in body and in bearing:

9995 si blicte im dicke tougen

she glanced at-him often secretly

an die hende und under ougen;

at the hands and under eyes;

si besach sîn arme und sîniu bein,

she examined his arms and his legs,

an den ez offênliche schein,

in which it openly shone,

daz er sô tougenliche hal.

what he so secretly bid.

10000 si bespehete in obene hin ze tal:

she scanned him from-above thither to valley:

swaz maget an manne spehen sol,

whatever maiden in man scan shall,

daz geviel ir allez an im wol

that pleased her all in him well

und lobete ez in ir muote.

and praised it in her spirit.

nu daz diu schœne guote

now that the fair good-one

10005 sîne geschepfede sô rîch

his form so rich

und sîne site sô hêrlîch

and his manners so splendid

sunder bespehete unde besach,

apart scanned and examined,

ir herze tougenliche sprach:

her heart secretly spoke:

»got hêrre, wunderære,

»God lord, wonder-worker,

ist iht des wandelbære

(if)-is anything of-it faulty

10010

destu ie begienge oder begâst,

which-thou ever didst or dost,

und destu an uns geschaffen hâst,

and which-thou in us created hast,

sô ist hie zwâre wandel an,

so is here truly fault on,

daz dirre hêrlîche man,

that this splendid man,

an den du solhe sælekeit

on whom thou such blessedness

10015

lîbes halben hâst geleit,

body's side hast laid,

daz der als irrecliche

that he so strayingly

von rîche ze rîche

from realm to realm

sîne nôtdürfte suochen sol.

his necessities seek shall.

im solte billich unde wol

him should rightly and well

10020

ein rîche dienen oder ein lant,

a realm serve or a land,

des dinc alsô wære gewant.

whose affair so were turned.

diu werlt stât wunderliche,

the world stands wondrously,

sô vil manc künicrîche

so very many-a kingdom

besetzt ist mit swacher art,

occupied is with weak nature,

10025

daz ime der einez niht enwart.

that him of-them one not became.

ein lîp alsô gebære,

a body so fitting,

der sô getugendet wære,

who so virtuous were,

der solte guot und êre hân.

he should wealth and honor have.

10030 an ime ist sêre missetân.

in him is sorely misdone.

got hêrre, dû hâst ime gegeben

God lord, thou hast him given

dem lîbe ein ungelîchez leben.«

to-the body an unequal life.«

sus redetes ofte diu maget.

thus spoke-she often the maiden.

nu hete ir muoter ouch gesaget

now had her mother also told

10035 ir hêrren umbe den koufman

her lord about the merchant

allez von ende her dan,

all from end hither thence,

als ir ez selbe habet vernomen,

as you it yourselves have heard,

daz dinc, wiez allez her ist komen,

the matter, how-it all hither is come,

und wie er nihtes gerte,

and how he of-nothing desired,

10040 wan daz man in gewerte

except that one him should-grant

frides dâ nâch mêre,

of-peace there after more,

swenne er dekeine kêre

whenever he any turn

næme in daz künicrîche.

should-take into the kingdom.

diz hetes im heinliche

this had-she him secretly

von ende unz ende gesaget.

from end to end told.

10045

The Notch in the Sword

XXV

While the squire Paranis cleans Tristan's armor, Isolde draws his sword and finds a gap in its blade. She sets the lost piece she has kept into the notch, and it fits. Comparing the names Tantris and Tristan, she finds that one is the other's syllables reversed, and she knows him for her uncle's killer, whom she has twice saved. She takes the sword to him in his bath and means to kill him; he begs her to think of her honor as a lady and a maiden.

Hier under hiez ouch ime diu maget

Here under bade also him the maiden

ir knappen Paranîsen

her squire Paranis

sîn harnasch und sîn îsen

his harness and his iron

wîz unde schœne machen

white and fair make

und ze andern sînen sachen

and to other his affairs

wol unde flîzeclîchen sehen.

well and diligently see.

nu diz was allez geschehen:

now this was all happened:

10050

ez was schône unde wol bereit

it was beautifully and well prepared

und über ein ander hin geleit.

and over one another thither laid.

10055 nu gie diu maget heinliche dar

now went the maiden secretly thither

und nam es alles sunder war.

and took of-it all apart heed.

Nu ergieng ez aber Îsolde,

Now went it again to-Isolde,

alsô der billich wolde,

as the right would,

daz si aber ir herzequâle

that she again her heart's-torment

10060 zem anderen mâle

at-the second time

vor den andern allen vant.

before the others all found.

ir herze daz was dar gewant,

her heart that was thither turned,

ir ouge allez dar wac,

her eye all thither weighed,

dâ der harnasch dâ lac;

where the harness there lay;

10065 und enweiz niht, wie si des gezam,

and know not, how she of-it befitted,

daz sî daz swert ze handen nam,

that she the sword to hands took,

als juncfrouwen unde kint

as young-ladies and children

gelustic unde gelengic sint

curious and eager are

und weiz got ouch genuoge man.

and knows God also many men.

si zôch ez ûz und sach ez an 10070
she drew it out and looked it at

und schouwete ez wâ unde wâ.
and viewed it where and where.

nu ersach si den gebresten dâ:
now espied she the flaw there:

si begunde an die scharthen
she began at the notch

lange unde sêre warten
long and sorely look

und gedâhte in ir muote: 10075
and thought in her spirit:

»sam mir got der guote,
»so-help me God the good,

ich wæne, ich den gebresten hân,
I think, I the flaw have,

der hier inne solte stân,
which here in should stand,

und zwâre ich wil es nemen war.«
and truly I will of-it take heed.»

si brâhte in unde sazte in dar: 10080
she brought it and set it there:

nu fuogte diu lucke
now fitted the gap

und daz vertâne stucke,
and the lost piece,

und wâren also einbære,
and were so matching,

als obe ez ein dinc wære,
as if it one thing were,

als ouch gewesen wâren 10085
as also been were

innerhalp zwein jâren.
within two years.

nu begunde ir herze kalten
now began her heart grow-cold

umbe ir schaden den alten.
about her harm the old.

ir varwe diu wart beide
her color it became both

10090 von zorne und von leide
from anger and from sorrow

tôtbleich und iesâ fiuwerrôt:
deathly-pale and at-once fiery-red:

»â,« sprach si, »sældelôse Îsôt,
»ah,« spoke she, »luckless Isolde,

owê mir unde wâfen!
alas for-me and alarm!

wer hât diz veige wâfen
who has this doomed weapon

10095 von Kurnewâle her getragen?
from Cornwall hither carried?

hie wart mîn œheim mite erslagen,
here was my uncle with slain,

und der in sluoc, der hiez Tristan.
and who him slew, he was-called Tristan.

wer gab ez disem spilman?
who gave it to-this minstrel?

der ist doch Tantris genant.«
he is yet Tantris named.«

10100 die namen begunde sî zehant
the names began she at-once

beide in ir sinnen ahten,
both in her senses weigh,

ir beider lût betrachten.
of-them of-both sound consider.

»â hêrre,« sprach si wider sich,
»ah lord,« spoke she to herself,

»dise namen die beswærent mich.

»these names they grieve me.

ine kan niht wizzen, wie in sî:

I can not know, how to-them be:

10105

si lûtent nâhe ein ander bî.«

they sound near one another by.«

»Tantris,« sprach si, »und Tristan,

»Tantris,« spoke she, »and Tristan,

dâ ist binamen heinlîche an.«

there is truly secret on.«

nu sî die namen begunde

now she the names began

ze trîbenne in dem munde,

to drive in the mouth,

10110

nu geviel si an die buochstabe,

now fell she on the letters,

dâ man si beide schephet abe,

there one them both creates from,

und vant in disem al zehant

and found in this all at-once

die selben, die sî in jenem vant.

the same, which she in that found.

nu begundes an in beiden

now began-she in them both

10115

die sillaben scheiden

the syllables separate

und satzte nâch als vor

and set after as before

und kam rehte ûf des namen spor.

and came right on the name's track.

si vant ir ursuoche dar an:

she found her search there on:

vür sich sô las si Tristan,

before herself so read she Tristan,

10120

her wider sô las si Tantris;

hither back so read she Tantris;

hie mite was sî des namen gewis.

here with was she of-the name certain.

»jâ jâ,« sprach aber die schœne dô,

»yes yes,« spoke again the fair then,

»ist disen mæren danne sô,

»(if)-is with-these tidings then so,

10125 disen valsch und dise trûgeheit

this falsehood and this deceit

hât mir mîn herze wol geseit.

has me my heart well told.

wie wol ich weste al dise vart,

how well I knew all this course,

sît ich in merkende wart,

since I him noticing became,

sît ich an ime lîp unde gebâr

since I in him body and bearing

10130 und sîn dinc allez alsô gâr

and his affair all so wholly

besunder in mîn herze las,

apart into my heart read,

daz er gebûrte ein hêrre was!

that he by-birth a lord was!

wer hæte ouch diz getân wan er,

who would-have also this done but he,

daz er von Kurnewâle her

that he from Cornwall hither

10135 ze sînen tôtvînden vert,

to his mortal-enemies fares,

und wir in zwirnt haben ernert.

and we him twice have saved.

ernert? erst nû vil ungenesen.

saved? he-is now very unsaved.

diz swert daz muoz sîn ende wesen!

this sword that must his end be!

nu île, rich dîn leit, Îsôt!

now hurry, avenge thy sorrow, Isolde!

gelît er von dem swerte tôt,

(if)-lies he by the sword dead,

10140

dâ mite er dînen œheim sluoc,

whith with he thy uncle slew,

sô ist der râche genuoc.«

so is of-the vengeance enough.«

si nam daz swert ze handen,

she took the sword to hands,

si gienc über Tristanden,

she went over Tristan,

dâ er in einem bade saz.

where he in a bath sat.

10145

»jâ,« sprach si, »Tristan, bistu daz?«

»yes,« spoke she, »Tristan, art-thou that?«

»nein frouwe, ich bin ez Tantris.«

»no lady, I am it Tantris.«

»sô bistu, des bin ich gewis,

»so art-thou, of-it am I certain,

Tantris unde Tristan:

Tantris and Tristan:

die zwêne sint ein veiger man;

the two are one doomed man;

10150

daz mir Tristan hât getân,

what me Tristan has done,

daz muoz ûf Tantrîsen gân:

that must on Tantris go:

du giltest mînen œheim!«

thou payest-for my uncle!«

»nein, süeziu juncfrouwe, nein!

»no, sweet young-lady, no!

- 10155 durch gotes willen, waz tuot ir?
for God's will, what do you?
 gedenket iuwers namen an mir:
think of-your name on me:
 ir sît ein frouwe und ein maget.
you are a lady and a maiden.
 swâ man den mort von iu gesaget,
wherever one the murder of you says,
 dâ ist diu wunneclîche Îsôt
there is the blissful Isolde
- 10160 iemer an den êren tât.
ever in the honors dead.
 diu sunne, diu von Îrlant gât,
the sun, which from Ireland goes,
 diu manic herze erfrôuwet hât,
which many-a heart gladdened has,
 â, diu hât danne ein ende!
ah, it has then an end!
 owê der liechten hende,
alas of-the bright hands,
- 10165 wie zimet daz swert dar inne!«
how befits the sword there in!«

The Bath

XXVI

The queen comes in and Isolde shows her the sword and the piece. The queen stops her daughter: Tristan is under her protection, and revenge breaks their faithfulness. Isolde wavers between anger and womanhood, raising the sword and dropping it, until womanhood wins and Morold goes unavenged. Her mother tells her that her brother's death was her greatest grief, but that she fears more for her daughter, and that unless they deal wisely with the steward, the whole family will lose its honor.

Nu gie diu küniginne,

Now went the queen,

ir muoter, zuo den türen in:

her mother, to the doors in:

»wie nû,« sprach sî, »waz sol diz sîn?

»how now,« spoke she, »what shall this be?

tohter, waz tiutest dû hie mite?

daughter, what meanest thou here with?

sint diz schœne vrouwen site?

are these fair ladies' manners?

10170

hâstu dînen sin verlorn?

hast-thou thy sense lost?

weder ist diz schimph oder zorn?

whether is this jest or anger?

waz sol daz swert in dîner hant?«

what shall the sword in thy hand?»

»â, frouwe muoter, wis gemant

»ah, lady mother, be reminded

unser beider herzeswære:

of-our of-both heart's-grief:

10175

diz ist der mordære

this is the murderer

Tristan, der dînen bruoder sluoc.

Tristan, who thy brother slew.

nu habe wir guoter state genuoc,
now have we of-good chance enough,

daz wir uns an im rechen
that we ourselves on him avenge

10180 und diz swert durch in stechen:

and this sword through him stab:

ez enkumet uns beiden niemer baz.«
it comes us both never better.«

»ist diz Tristan? wie weistu daz?«
»is this Tristan? how knowest-thou that?«

»ich weiz ez wol, ez ist Tristan.
»I know it well, it is Tristan.

diz swert ist sîn, nu sich ez an
this sword is his, now look it at

10185 und sich die scharthen dâ bî

and look the notch there by

und merke danne, ob er ez sî.
and mark then, whether he it be.

ich sazte iezuo diz stuckelîn
I set now this little-piece

ze dirre veigen scharthen in:
into this doomed notch in:

owê, dô sach ich, daz ez schein
alas, then saw I, that it seemed

10190 einbærelîche und rehte als ein.«

matching and right as one.«

»â,« sprach diu muoter zehant,
»ah,« spoke the mother at-once,

»Îsôt, wes hâstu mich gemant?
»Isolde, of-what hast-thou me reminded?

daz ich mîn leben ie gewan!
that I my life ever gained!

und ist diz danne Tristan,
and is this then Tristan,

- wie bin ich dar an sô betrogen!« 10195
how am I there on so deceived!
- nu hete ouch Îsôt ûf gezogen
now had also Isolde up drawn
- daz swert und trat hin über in.
the sword and stepped thither over him.
- ir muoter kêrte zuo zir hin:
her mother turned to to-her thither:
- »lâ stân, Îsôt,« sprach sî, »lâ stân!
»let stand, Isolde,« spoke she, »let stand!
- weist iht, waz ich vertriuwet hân?« 10200
knowest at-all, what I pledged have?
- »ine ruoche, zwâre, ez ist sîn tât.«
»I-not care, truly, it is his death.«
- Tristan sprach: »merzî, bêle Îsôt!«
Tristan spoke: »mercy, fair Isolde!
- »î, übeler man,« sprach Îsôt, »î,
»ah, evil man,« spoke Isolde, »ah,
- unde vorderst dû merzî?
and demandest thou mercy?
- merzî gehoeret niht ze dir: 10205
mercy belongs not to thee:
- dîn leben daz lâzestû mir!«
thy life that leavest-thou to-me!
- »nein tohter,« sprach diu muoter dô,
»no daughter,« spoke the mother then,
- »ez enstât nu leider niht alsô,
»it stands now alas not so,
- daz wir uns mûgen gerechen,
that we us may avenge,
- wir enwellen danne brechen 10210
we unless-will then break
- unser triuwe und unser êre.
our faithfulness and our honor.

engâhe niht ze sêre!

hurry not too sorely!

er ist in mîner huote

he is in my protection

mit lîbe und mit guote.

with body and with goods.

10215 ich hân in, swiez dar zuo sî komen,

I have him, however-it there to be come,

ganzlîche in mînen fride genomen.«

wholly into my peace taken.»

»genâde, frouwe!« sprach Tristan,

»mercy, lady!« spoke Tristan,

»frouwe, gedenket wol dar an,

»lady, think well there on,

daz ich guot unde leben

that I goods and life

10220 an iuwer êre hân ergeben,

to your honor have given,

und enpfienget mich alsô.«

and received me so.»

»du liugest!« sprach diu junge dô.

»thou liest!« spoke the young then.

»ich weiz wol, wie diu rede ergie:

»I know well, how the speech went:

sine gelobete Tristande nie

she promised to-Tristan never

10225 weder fride noch huote

neither peace nor protection

an lîbe noch an guote.«

in body nor in goods.»

hie mite sô liefs in aber an,

here with so ran-she him again on,

hie mite rief aber Tristan:

here with cried again Tristan:

»â, bèle Îsôt, merzî, merzî!«

»ah, fair Isolde, mercy, mercy!«

ouch was diu muoter ie dâ bî,

also was the mother ever there by,

10230

diu durnehte künigîn:

the upright queen:

er mohte sunder sorge sîn.

he could without care be.

ouch wære er zuo den stunden

also were he at the hours

in daz bat gebunden

into the bath bound

und Îsôt eine dâ gewesen,

and Isolde alone there been,

10235

er wære doch vor ir genesen.

he would-be yet before her saved.

diu süeze, diu guote,

the sweet, the good,

diu siure an wîbes muote

who sourness in woman's spirit

noch herzegallen nie gewan,

nor heart's-gall never gained,

wie solde diu geslahen man?

how should she slay man?

10240

wan daz si von ir leide

except that she from her sorrow

und ouch von zorne beide

and also from anger both

solhe gebærde hæte,

such bearing had,

als ob siz gerne tæte;

as if she-it gladly should-do;

und hæte ouch lihte getân,

and would-have also perhaps done,

10245

möhte sî daz herze hân.

could she the heart have.

daz was ir aber tiure

that was her however scarce

ze sus getâner siure.

for so made sourness.

doch was ir herze niht sô guot,

yet was her heart not so good,

10250 sine hæte zorn und unmuot,

she-not had anger and displeasure,

wan sî den hôrte unde sach,

for she him heard and saw,

von dem ir leide geschach.

from whom to-her sorrow happened.

si hôrte ir vîent unde sâhen

she heard her enemy and saw-him

und mohte sîn doch niht geslahen:

and could him yet not slay:

10255 diu süeze wîpheit lag ir an

the sweet womanhood lay her on

unde zucte sî dâ van.

and drew her there from.

an ir striten harte

in her strove hard

die zwô widerwarte,

the two contraries,

die widerwarten conterfeit:

the contrary counterfeits:

10260 zorn unde wîpheit,

anger and womanhood,

diu übele bî ein ander zement,

which ill by one another befit,

swâ si sich ze handen nement.

wherever they themselves to hands take.

sô zorn an Îsolde

when anger in Isolde

den vîent slahen wolde,

the enemy slay would,

sô gie diu süeze wîpheit zuo:

so went the sweet womanhood to:

10265

»nein,« sprach si suoze, »nein entuo!«

»no,« spoke she sweetly, »no not-do!«

sus was ir herze in zwei gemuot:

thus was her heart in two minded:

ein herze was übel unde guot.

one heart was evil and good.

diu schoene warf daz swert dernider

the fair threw the sword down

und nam ez aber iesâ wider:

and took it again at-once back:

10270

sine wiste in ir muote

she-not knew in her spirit

under übele und under guote,

between evil and between good,

ze wederem si solte:

to which she should:

si wolte unde enwolte,

she would and not-would,

si wolte tuon unde lân.

she would do and leave.

10275

sus lie der zwîvel umbe gân,

thus let the doubt around go,

biz doch diu süeze wîpheit

until yet the sweet womanhood

an dem zorne sige erstreit,

on the anger victory won,

sô daz der tôtvînt genas
so that the mortal-enemy survived

10280 und Môrolt ungerochen was.
and Morold unavenged was.

Hie mite warf sî daz swert von ir,
Here with threw she the sword from her,

weinende sprach si: »ouwê mir,
weeping spoke she: »alas for-me,

daz ich ie disen tac gesach!«
that I ever this day saw!«

diu wîse, ir muoter, zuo ir sprach:
the wise, her mother, to her spoke:

10285 »herzetohter mîne,
»heart's-daughter mine,

die herzeswære dîne,
the heart's-grief thine,

die selben die sint leider mîn
the same they are alas mine

baz unde harter danne dîn;
better and harder than thine;

nâch gotes genâden sîn gânt dir
by God's mercy they go to-thee

10290 niht alse nâhen alse mir.
not as near as to-me.

mîn bruoder, leider der ist tôt:
my brother, alas he is dead:

daz was biz her mîn meistiu nôt.
that was until now my greatest distress.

nu fürhte ich eine nôt von dir,
now fear I a distress from thee,

entriuwen, tohter, diu gât mir
in-truth, daughter, it goes me

10295 vil nâher danne jeniu tuo:
very nearer than that-one does:

mir wart nie niht sô liep sô duo.
to-me became never anything so dear as thou.

ê daz mir iht an dir geschehe,
before that to-me anything in thee happen,

daz ich rehte ungerne sehe,
which I right unwillingly see,

ich lâze ê gerne disen haz;
I leave rather gladly this hatred;

ich lîde sanfter unde baz
I suffer easier and better

10300

eine swære danne zwô.
one grief than two.

mîn dinc daz stât mir iezuo sô
my affair it stands to-me now so

umbe den unsæligen man,
about the unblessed man,

der uns mit kampfē sprichet an,
who us with combat speaks on,

wir ensehen genôte dar zuo,
we unless-see closely there to,

10305

dîn vater, der künec, ich unde duo
thy father, the king, I and thou

wir haben iemer mêre
we have ever more

verloren unser êre
lost our honor

und werden niemer mêre frô.«
and become never more glad.»

Tristan's Plea

XXVII

From his bath Tristan admits that he caused them sorrow, but only to save his life. He promises to settle the steward's claim and, if they will set aside their hatred, to tell them good tidings. The queen, weeping, weighs her power to take revenge. Brangaene enters, finds the sword lying bare, and counsels against a killing that would cost the queen her honor, since he is under her protection. In private she advises them to hear him courteously, since he came on earnest business.

10310 Jener in dem bade der sprach dô:

That-one in the bath he spoke then:

»sæligen frouwen beide,

»blessed ladies both,

ez ist wâr, ich hân iu leide

it is true, I have you sorrow

und aber mit grôzer nôt getân.

and however with great distress done.

welt ir iuch, also ir sult, enstân

(if)-will you yourselves, as you shall, understand

10315 sô wizzet ir wol, daz diu nôt

so know you well, that the distress

niht anders was niwan der tô:

not otherwise was but the death:

den lîdet nôte ein ieclich man,

that suffers reluctantly an each man,

die wîle er sich generen kan.

the while he himself save can.

swiez aber dar umbe ergangen ist,

however-it however there about gone is,

10320 swie ez iu nû ze dirre frist

however it you now at this time

ze dem truhsæzen ist gewant,

to the steward is turned,

daz kêret allez zeiner hant.

that turns all to-one hand.

dem sol ich ein guot ende geben;

to-it shall I a good end give;

ich meine, ob ir mich lâzet leben,

I mean, if you me let live,

und es enirre mich der tôt.

and it unless-hinder me the death.

10325

frouwe Îsôt und aber Îsôt,

lady Isolde and again Isolde,

ich weiz wol, daz ir alle zît

I know well, that you all time

sinnic unde sælic sît,

clever and blessed are,

getriuwe unde bescheiden:

faithful and discreet:

möht ich mich hin ziu beiden

could I myself thither to-you both

10330

einer rede verlâzen

of-a speech trust

und woltet ir iuch mâzen

and would you yourselves restrain

übeler gebærde her ze mir

of-ill bearing hither to me

und ouch des hazzes, den ir

and also of-the hate, which you

Tristande lange habet getragen,

to-Tristan long have borne,

10335

ich wolte iu guotiu mære sagen.«

I would you good tidings tell.«

Îsôte muoter Îsôt,

Isolde's mother Isolde,

si sach in lange an und wart rôz;

she looked him long at and became red;

ir liechten ougen wurden vol.

her bright eyes became full.

10340 »owê«, sprach sî, »nu hœre ich wol

»alas«, spoke she, »now hear I well

und weiz vür wâr, daz ir ez sît;

and know for true, that you it are;

ich zwîvelte unz an dise zît.

I doubted until to this time.

nu habt ir mir die wârheit

now have you me the truth

ungefrâget geseit.

unasked told.

10345 owê, owê, hêr Tristan,

alas, alas, lord Tristan,

daz ich iuwer ie gewalt gewan

that I of-you ever power gained

sô guoten, alse ich iezuo hân

so good, as I now have

und der alsô niht ist getân,

and which so not is made,

daz ich in alsô geüeben müge,

that I it so exercise may,

10350 als ez mir wege unde tüge!

as it to-me weigh and avail!

gewalt ist aber sô manicvalt:

power is however so manifold:

ich wæne, ich mac wol disen gewalt

I think, I may well this power

an mînem vînde üeben,

on my enemy exercise,

daz reht sô vil getrüeben

the right so much trouble

10355 an einem übelen manne.

in an evil man.

jâ hêrre, wil ich danne?

yes lord, will I then?

entriuwen jâ, ich wæne.«

in-truth yes, I think.«

Iemitten kam Brangæne

Meanwhile came Brangaene

diu stolze, diu wîse

the proud, the wise

lachende unde lîse,

laughing and softly,

schône unde wol gestrichen

beautifully and well dressed

aldort her în geslichen,

there hither in crept,

und sach daz swert dâ ligen bar,

and saw the sword there lie bare,

die frouwen beide riuwevar.

the ladies both sorrow-colored.

»wie nû?« sprach diu gefüege dô,

»how now?« spoke the seemly then,

»disen gebærden wiest den sô?

»these bearings how-is-it then so?

waz mære trîbet ir driu?

what tidings drive you three?

disiu frouwen ougen, wie sint diu

these ladies' eyes, how are they

alsus trûebe und alsô naz?

thus troubled and so wet?

diz swert hie lît, waz tiutet daz?«

this sword here lies, what means that?«

»sich«, sprach diu guote künigîn,

»see«, spoke the good queen,

»Brangæne, herzeniftel mîn,

»Brangaene, heart's-niece mine,

10360

10365

10370

sich, wie wir alle sîn betrogen:

see, how we all are deceived:

wir haben ze blintliche erzogen

we have too blindly raised

10375 den slangen vür die nahtegalen,

the snake for the nightingales,

dem rappen kerne vür gemalen,

to-the raven grain before ground,

der der tûben solte sîn.

which to-the dove should be.

wie hân wir, hêre trehtîn,

how have we, lord God,

den vîent vür den friunt ernert,

the enemy for the friend saved,

10380 dem übelen tôde zwirnt erwert

from-the evil death twice guarded

mit unser selber handen

with our own hands

unsern vînt Tristanden!

our enemy Tristan!

sich, warte, er sitzet! deist Tristan.

see, look, he sits! that-is Tristan.

nu hân ich zwîvel dar an,

now have I doubt there on,

10385 weder ich mich reche oder entuo.

whether I myself avenge or not-do.

niftel, waz rætest dû derzuo?«

niece, what advisest thou thereto?«

»nein, frouwe, tuot die rede hin!

»no, lady, put the speech away!

iuwer sælde und iuwer sin

your fortune and your sense

diu sint hie zuo ze guot,

they are here to too good,

daz ir iemer keinen muot 10390
that you ever any spirit

ûf solhe untât gewinnet
on such misdeed win

und iemer sô geunsinnet,
and ever so senseless,

daz ir ze manslahte
that you to manslaughter

iemer gewinnet ahte
ever win heed

unde ouch danne zeinem man, 10395
and also then on-a man,

des ir iuch habt genomen an
of-whom you yourself have taken on

ze fride und ze huote.
to peace and to protection.

es enwart iu nie ze muote,
it became to-you never to spirit,

des ich got wol getrûwen sol.
of-it I God well trust shall.

ouch sult ir des gedenken wol, 10400
also shall you of-it think well,

waz rede iuch mit im ane gât,
what speech you with him on goes,

diu niwan umbe iuwer êre stât.
which only about your honor stands.

soltet ir iuwer êre geben
should you your honor give

umbe keines iuwers vîndes leben?«
for any your enemy's life?«

»waz wildu danne, daz ich tuo?« 10405
»what wilt-thou then, that I do?«

»frouwe, dâ denket selbe zuo:
»lady, there think yourself to:

gât hinnen, lât in ûz gân.

go hence, let him out go.

die wîle muget ir rât hân,

the while may you counsel have,

waz iu daz wægeste sî.«

what to-you the most-advisable be.«

10410 hic mite giengens dan si drî

here with went-they thence they three

durch rât in ir heinliche.

for counsel into their privacy.

Îsôt diu sinnerîche

Isolde the clever

»seht«, sprachs »ir beide, sprechet an,

»see«, spoke-she »you both, speak on,

waz mag er meinen, dirre man?

what may he mean, this man?

10415 er sprach wider uns beide daz,

he spoke to us both that,

wolten wir lâzen disen haz,

would we leave this hatred,

den wir im lange haben getragen,

which we him long have borne,

er wolte uns guotiu mære sagen;

he would us good tidings tell;

waz diz sî, des wundert mich.«

what this be, of-it wonders me.«

10420 Brangæne sprach: »dâ râte ich,

Brangaene spoke: »there advise I,

daz in nieman innen bringe

that him no-one aware bring

dekeiner slahte undinge,

of-any kind ill-thing,

biz wir bevinden sînen muot.

until we find-out his spirit.

sîn muot ist lîhte vil guot

his spirit is perhaps very good

hin ze iuwer beider êren.

thither toward your of-both honors.

10425

man sol den mantel kêren,

one shall the mantle turn,

als ie die winde sint gewant.

as ever the winds are turned.

wer weiz, ob er in Îrlant

who knows, whether he into Ireland

durch iuwer êre komen ist.

for your honor come is.

hûetet sîn ze dirre frist

guard him at this time

10430

und lobet ouch eines iemer got,

and praise also of-one-thing ever God,

daz dirre ungefüege spot

that this unseemly mockery

umbe des truhsæzen valscheit

about the steward's falsehood

mit ime sol werden hin geleit.

with him shall become away laid.

got der hete unser ruoche

God he had of-us care

10435

an unserre suoche;

in our search;

wan wære er an den stunden

for were he at the hours

niht kurzlîche funden,

not shortly found,

weiz got, sô wære er iesâ tât.

knows God, so would-be he at-once dead.

wizze Krist, juncfrouwe Îsôt,

knows Christ, young-lady Isolde,

10440

sô füere ez wirs, danne ez var.

so would-fare it worse, than it fare.

habet niht ungebærde dar,

have not ill-bearing there,

wan wirt er ihtes innen

for (if)-becomes he of-anything aware

und mag er danne entrinnen,

and (if)-may he then escape,

10445 des hât er reht, daz er daz tuo.

of-it has he right, that he that do.

von diu dâ denket beide zuo:

from that there think both to:

bietet ime ez also wol,

offer him it as well,

also man von rehte sol.

as one by right shall.

daz râte ich iu, des volget mir:

that advise I you, of-it follow me:

10450 Tristan der ist als edel als ir

Tristan he is as noble as you

unde ist höfsch unde wîs,

and is courtly and wise,

vollekomen alle wîs.

perfect all ways.

swie iu daz herze hin zim sî,

however to-you the heart thither to-him be,

sît ime doch höfschliche bî.

be to-him yet courteously by.

10455 binamen, swes er habe gedâht,

truly, whatever he have thought,

in hât ernest ûz brâht.

him has earnest out brought.

sîn gewerp und sîn gerinc

his pursuit and his striving

der ist umb ernstlîchiu dinc.«

it is about earnest things.«

The Proposal

XXVIII

Tristan falls at the ladies' feet. On Brangaene's advice they promise him safety, and he offers to bring about within two days a marriage for Isolde with a noble king richer than her father. When he pledges his life on it, they reconcile, and all three kiss him, Isolde reluctantly. He tells them that he came to Ireland on Mark's behalf, which is why he killed the serpent, and that she will be queen of Cornwall and England. Isolde then shows her mother how Tantris and Tristan are one name.

Sus stuondens ûf und giengen dan

Thus stood-they up and went thence

und kâmen hin, dâ Tristan

and came thither, where Tristan

10460

heinlîche an sînem bette saz.

secretly on his bed sat.

Tristan sîn selbes niht vergaz:

Tristan of-his self not forgot:

er fuor ûf balde gegen in

he went up quickly toward them

und viel sâ gegen in allen hin

and fell at-once toward them all thither

und lac den höfschen süezen

and lay to-the courtly sweet-ones

10465

flêhlîche zuo den fûezen

imploringly at the feet

und sprach ouch mit dem valle:

and spoke also with the fall:

»genâde, ir süezen alle,

»mercy, you sweet-ones all,

habet genâde wider mich!

have mercy toward me!

10470 lât mich geniezen, daz ich

let me profit, that I

durch iuwer êre und iuvern fromen

for your honor and your benefit

her bin in iuwer rîche komen.«

hither am into your realm come.»

diu liehte cumpanîe,

the bright company,

die liechten alle drîe,

the bright all three,

10475 ieglîchiu warf ir ougen dan

each threw her eyes thence

und sâhen alle ein ander an.

and looked all one another at.

si stuonden unde er lag alsô.

they stood and he lay so.

»frouwe«, sprach Brangæne dô,

»lady«, spoke Brangaene then,

»der ritter lît ze lange dâ.«

»the knight lies too long there.«

10480 diu küniginne sprach iesâ:

the queen spoke at-once:

»waz wildu nû, daz ich im tuo?

»what wilt-thou now, that I to-him do?

mîn herze stât mir niht dar zuo,

my heart stands me not there to,

daz ich sîn friunt gewesen müge:

that I his friend be may:

ine weiz niht, waz ich tuo, daz tüge.«

I know not, what I do, that avails.»

Brangæne diu sprach aber ze ir

Brangaene she spoke again to her

10485

»nu, liebiu frouwe, volget mir

»now, dear lady, follow me

ir unde mîn juncfrouwe Îsôt:

you and my young-lady Isolde:

ich weiz ez wârez alse den tût,

I know it true as the death,

daz irn in iuvern sinnen

that you-him in your senses

unsanfte müget gewinnen

unsoftly may gain

10490

vor iuerm alten leide.

before your old sorrow.

sô gelobet im doch daz beide,

so promise him yet that both,

daz er des lîbes sicher sî.

that he of-the body safe be.

er geredet vil lîhte dâ bî

he speaks very perhaps there by

sînes frumen aber eteswaz.«

of-his profit however something.«

10495

die frouwen sprâchen: »nû sî daz.«

the ladies spoke: »now be that.«

hie mite sô hiez si in ûf stân.

here with so bade she him up stand.

nu diz gelübede was getân,

now this pledge was done,

si sâzen alle viere nider.

they sat all four down.

Tristan greif an sîn mære wider:

Tristan reached at his tale again:

10500

»seht«, sprach er, »frouwe künigîn,

»see«, spoke he, »lady queen,

welt ir nu mîn guot friunt sîn,
(if)-will you now my good friend be,

ich wil iu daz inein tragen
I will to-you that together carry

noch innen disen zwein tagen
yet within these two days

10505 (deist wâr ân allen argen list),
(that-is true without all evil art),

iuwer tohter, diu iu lieb ist,
your daughter, who to-you dear is,

daz si einen edelen künic nimet,
that she a noble king takes,

der ir ze hêren wol gezimet,
who her as lord well befits,

schœne unde milte,
fair and generous,

10510 zem spere und zem schilte
at-the spear and at-the shield

ein ritter edel und ûz erkorn,
a knight noble and out chosen,

von künigen unz her geborn
from kings until now born

und ist ouch danne dâ bî
and is also then there by

vîl rîcher danne ir vater sî.«
very richer than her father be.«

10515 »entriuwen«, sprach diu künigîn,
»in-truth«, spoke the queen,

»möhte ich der rede gewis sîn,
»could I of-the speech certain be,

ich volgete unde tæte,
I would-follow and would-do,

swes mich ieman bæte.«
whatever me anyone should-ask.«

»frouwe«, sprach aber Tristan,

»lady«, spoke again Tristan,

»ich gewisse iuch schiere dar an.

»I assure you quickly there on.

10520

bewære ichz iu zehant niht,

(if)-prove I-it to-you at-once not,

sô diu suone geschiht,

when the reconciliation happens,

sô lât mich ûz dem fride wesen

so let me out-of the peace be

und lât mich niemer genesen.«

and let me never survive.«

diu wîse sprach: »Brangæne, sprich,

the wise spoke: »Brangaene, speak,

10525

waz rætest dû, wie dunket dich?»

what advisest thou, how seems to-thee?»

»dâ dunket mich sîn rede guot

»there seems to-me his speech good

und râte ouch, daz ir ez tuot.

and advise also, that you it do.

leget allen zwîvel hin

lay all doubt away

und stât ûf beide und kûsset in.

and stand up both and kiss him.

10530

al sî ich niht ein kûnigîn,

all be I not a queen,

ich wil ouch an der suone sîn:

I will also in the reconciliation be:

er was mîn mâc, swie arme ich sî.«

he was my kinsman, however poor I be.«

sus kustens in dô alle drî;

thus kissed-they him then all three;

10535 doch tet ez Îsôt diu junge
yet did it Isolde the young

mit langer widerunge.
with long reluctance.

Nu disiu suone alsus geschach,
Now this reconciliation thus happened,

Tristan aber zen frouwen sprach:
Tristan again to-the ladies spoke:

»nu weiz ez got der guote,
»now knows it God the good,

10540 ine wart in mînem muote
I became in my spirit

sô frô nie, als ich iezuo bin;
so glad never, as I now am;

ich hân al den sorgen hin
I have all the cares thither

ewartet unde nâch gesehen,
looked-after and after looked,

die mir möhten geschehen,
which me might happen,

10545 daz ich mich des versehen sol.
that I myself of-it expect shall.

ich versihe mîchs niht, ich weiz ez wol,
I expect me-it not, I know it well,

daz ich in iuvern hulden bin.
that I in your favors am.

nu leget alle sorge hin:
now lay all care away:

ich bin iu ze êren und ze fromen
I am you to honors and to benefit

10550 von Kurnewâle zÎrlant komen.
from Cornwall to-Ireland come.

sît mîner êrren vart,
since my earlier journey,

daz ich hie generet wart,

that I here saved was,

sît sprach ich iemer mêre

since spoke I ever more

iuwer lop und iuwer êre

your praise and your honor

ze mînem hêrren Marke,

to my lord Mark,

10555

unz ich ime den muot sô starke

until I him the spirit so strongly

mit râte an iuch gewante,

with counsel on you turned,

daz er dar an genante

that he there on ventured

kûme, unde sage iu, umbe waz:

barely, and tell you, about what:

beidiu er vorhte den haz

both he feared the hatred

10560

und wolte ouch durch den willen mîn

and would also for the will mine

êlîches wîbes âne sîn,

of-wedded wife without be,

daz ich sîn erbære

that I his heir

nâch sînem tôde wære.

after his death were.

hie wîsete aber ich in van,

here directed however I him from,

10565

unz er mir volgen began.

until he me follow began.

sus wurden wir zwêne under uns zwein

thus became we two between us two

dirre selben reise inein;

of-this same journey together;

durch daz kam ich in Îrlant,
for that came I into Ireland,

10570 durch daz sluoc ich den serpent;
for that slew I the serpent;

und habet ir iuwer arbeit
and have you your hardship

vil sæleclîche an mich geleit,
very blessedly on me laid,

des sol mîn juncfrouwe sîn
of-it shall my young-lady be

frouwe unde künigîn
lady and queen

10575 ze Kurnewâle und zEngelant.
in Cornwall and in-England.

nu ist iu mîn geverte erkant.
now is to-you my conduct known.

sæligiu massenîe,
blessed household,

sæligen alle drîe:
blessed all three:

nu lât ez ouch verholen sîn.«
now let it also bidden be.»

10580 »nu saget mir«, sprach diu künigîn,
»now tell me«, spoke the queen,

»ob ich ez mînem hêrren sage
»if I it to-my lord tell

und eine suone inein trage:
and a reconciliation together carry:

missetuon ich iht dar an?«
mido I at-all there on?«

»nein ir, frouwe«, sprach Tristan,
»no you, lady«, spoke Tristan,

10585 »er sol ez von rehte wizzen.
»he shall it by right know.

sît et dar an geflizzen,

be just there on diligent,

daz mir kein schade iht ûf erstê.«

that to-me no harm at-all up arise.»

»nein, hêrre, fürhtet iuch nimê

»no, lord, fear yourself no-more

dane ist niemêre sorgen an.«

there is no-more cares on.»

Hie mite giengen die frouwen dan

Here with went the ladies thence

10590

in ir heinliche sunder

into their privacy apart

und ahteten hier under

and considered here under

sîn gelücke und sîne linge

his fortune and his success

an iegelîchem dinge.

in each thing.

ir iegelîchiu seite

of-them each told

10595

von sîner wîsheite:

of his wisdom:

diu muoter sus, Brangæne sô.

the mother thus, Brangaene so.

»sich, muoter«, sprach diu tohter dô,

»see, mother«, spoke the daughter then,

»wie wunderlîchen ich bevant,

»how wondrously I found,

daz er Tristan was genant:

that he Tristan was named:

10600

dô ich des swertes zende kam,

when I the sword's to-end came,

die namen ich ze handen nam

the names I to hands took

Tantris unde Tristan;

Tantris and Tristan;

nu ich si trîben began,

now I them drive began,

10605 nu bedûhte mich an in zwein,

now seemed-it me in them two,

si hæten eteswaz inein.

they had something together.

dâ nâch begunde ich trahten

there after began I ponder

und anclichen ahten

and closely weigh

und vant dô mit den buochstaben,

and found then with the letters,

10610 die man ze beiden namen sol haben,

which one to both names shall have,

daz ez allez ein was;

that it all one was;

wan swederhalp ich hin las,

for whichever-side I thither read,

sone was ie nimê dar an

so was ever no-more there on

wan Tantris oder Tristan

but Tantris or Tristan

10615 und ie an einem beide.

and ever in one both.

nu muoter, nu scheide

now mother, now separate

disen namen Tantris

this name Tantris

in ein Tan und in ein Tris

into a Tan and into a Tris

und sprich daz Tris vür daz Tan,

and speak the Tris before the Tan,

sô sprichest dû Tristan;

so speakest thou Tristan;

10620

sprich daz Tan vür daz Tris,

speak the Tan before the Tris,

sô sprichestu aber Tantris.«

so speakest-thou again Tantris.«

diu muoter segnete sich:

the mother blessed herself:

»got«, sprach si, »der gesegene mich!

»God«, spoke she, »he bless me!

von wannen kam dir ie der sin?«

from whence came to-thee ever the sense?«

10625

The King's Peace

XXIX

The queen asks the king to receive Tristan, who killed her brother, and he leaves the choice to her, since Morold was her kin. Tristan kneels and Gurmun forgives him, including Mark and his lands in the peace. Tristan tells his story again and offers Mark's princes as surety. Paranis brings Kurvenal secretly from the ship, and Tristan sends him back to tell the Cornish that all is well and to dress in their best. The ship rejoices, and the envious barons again call him a sorcerer.

Nu sî drî von im under in

Now they three of him among them

geredeten maneger hande,

talked of-many kind,

diu künigîn diu sande

the queen she sent

nâch dem kûnege; der kam dar.

for the king; he came thither.

10630 »seht, hêrre«, sprach si, »nemet war,

»see, lord«, spoke she, »take heed,

ir sult uns einer bete gewern,

you shall us one request grant,

der wir drî ernestlîche gern:

which we three earnestly desire:

tuot irz, ez kumt uns allen wol.«

(if)-do you-it, it comes us all well.«

»ich volge, swes ich volgen sol;

»I follow, whatever I follow shall;

10635 swaz ir welt, daz ist getân.«

whatever you want, that is done.«

»habt irz danne an mich verlân?«

»have you-it then to me left?«

sprach aber diu guote künigîn.

spoke again the good queen.

»jâ, swaz ir wellet, daz sol sîn.«

»yes, whatever you want, that shall be.«

»genâde, hêrre, des ist genuoc:

»thanks, lord, of-it is enough:

hêrre, der mînen bruoder sluoc,

lord, he-who my brother slew,

10640

Tristan, den hân ich hinne;

Tristan, him have I within;

den sult ir iuwer minne

to-him shall you your love

und iuwer hulde lâzen hân.

and your favor let have.

sîn gewerp der ist alsô getân,

his pursuit it is so made,

daz diu suone fuoge hât.«

that the reconciliation fitness has.«

10645

der kûnec sprach: »triuwen, disen rât

the king spoke: »in-truth, this counsel

den lâze ich beltliche an dich:

it leave I boldly to thee:

er gât dich mêre an danne mich.

it goes thee more on than me.

Môrolt, dîn bruoder, der was dir

Morold, thy brother, he was to-thee

nâher gesippe danne mir.

nearer related than to-me.

10650

hâstuz umbe in varen lân,

(if)-bast-thou-it for him let go,

wildû, sô hân ouch ichz getân.«

(if)-wilt-thou, so have also I-it done.«

sus seite sî dem kûnege dô

thus told she to-the king then

Tristandes mære rehte alsô,

Tristan's tale right so,

- 10655 als er ir selbe sagete.
as he to-her himself told.
- diz mære daz behagete
this tale it pleased
- dem künege wol und sprach ir zuo:
the king well and spoke to-her to:
- »nu sich, daz erz mit triuwen tuo.«
»now see, that he-it with faithfulness do.«
- diu künigîn dô sande
the queen then sent
- 10660 Brangæne nâch Tristande;
Brangaene for Tristan;
- und alse Tristan in gie,
and when Tristan in went,
- dem künege er sich ze füezen lie:
to-the king he himself at feet let:
- »genâde, hêrre künec!« sprach er.
»mercy, lord king!« spoke he.
- »stât ûf, hêr Tristan, und gât her!«
»stand up, lord Tristan, and come hither!«
- 10665 sprach Gurmûn, »unde küsset mich.
spoke Gurmûn, »and kiss me.
- ungerne sô verkiuse ich;
unwillingly so forgo I;
- iedoch verkiuse ich disen zorn,
yet forgo I this anger,
- sît in die frouwen hânt verkorn.«
since it the ladies have forgone.«
- »hêrre«, sprach aber Tristan,
»lord«, spoke again Tristan,

»an dirre suone dâ ist an 10670
»in this reconciliation there is on

mîn hêrre und beidiu sîniu lant?«
my lord and both his lands?«

»jâ hêrre«, sprach Gurmûn zehant.
»yes lord«, spoke Gurmûn at-once.

Nu disiû suone zende kam,
Now this reconciliation to-end came,

diu künigîn Tristanden nam
the queen Tristan took

und sazte in zuo ir tochter nider, 10675
and set him by her daughter down,

und bat in ouch, daz mære wider
and asked him also, the tale again

ir hêrren al von êrste sagen,
to-her lord all from first tell,

wie ez sich hæte dar getragen
how it itself had there carried

an allen disen sachen
in all these matters

beidiu umbe den trachen 10680
both about the dragon

und umbe des küneges Markes ger:
and about the king Mark's desire:

daz seite er aber von ende her.
that told he again from end hither.

der künec sprach aber: »hêr Tristan,
the king spoke again: »lord Tristan,

nu wie bewar ich mich hier an,
now how guard I myself here on,

daz ich der rede gewis sî?« 10685
that I of-the speech certain be?«

»vil wol, hêrre, ich hân hie bî

»very well, lord, I have here by

mînes hêrren fürsten alle.

my lord's princes all.

swaz gewisheit iu gevalle,

whatever assurance you please,

die saget ir mir, diu ist getân,

that tell you me, it is done,

10690 die wîle und ich ir einen hân.«

the while and I of-them one have.«

Hie mite sô schiet der künic dan.

Here with so parted the king thence.

die frouwen unde Tristan

the ladies and Tristan

die beliben aber eine dâ.

they remained again alone there.

Tristan nam Paranîsen sâ,

Tristan took Paranis at-once,

10695 »geselle«, sprach er, »gâ hin abe:

»companion«, spoke he, »go thither down:

dâ stât ein kiel in der habe,

there stands a keel in the harbor,

dâ ganc geswæslîche hin

there go quietly thither

und frâge, welher under in

and ask, which among them

Kurvenal dâ sî genant.

Kurvenal there be named.

10700 dem selben rûne zehant,

to-the same whisper at-once,

daz er ze sînem hêrren gê;

that he to his lord go;

und sage ouch nieman niht mê
and tell also no-one nothing more

und bringe in lîse, als höfsch du sîs.«
and bring him softly, as courtly thou art.»

nu hêrre, daz tet Parani:s:
now lord, that did Parani:s:

er brâhte in alsô lîse dar,
he brought him so softly thither,

10705

daz sîn nieman wart gewar.
that of-him no-one became aware.

nu si in zer kemenâten
now they in to-the chamber

vür die frouwen trâten,
before the ladies stepped,

im neic diu küniginne
him bowed the queen

und nieman mê dar inne.
and no-one more there within.

10710

si nâmen sîn durch daz niht war,
they took of-him for that not heed,

er enkam niht alse ein ritter dar.
he came not as a knight thither.

Nu Kurvenal Tristanden

Now Kurvenal Tristan

den frouwen under handen
the ladies under hands

frôlichen unde gesunden sach,
joyful and healthy saw,

10715

in franzoiser wîse er sprach:
in French manner he spoke:

»â, bêâ dûz sir,
»ah, fair sweet sir,

durch gotes willen, waz tuot ir?
for God's will, what do you?

daz ir sus wunneclîche

that you thus blissfully

10720 in disem himelrîche

in this heaven-kingdom

sus lûzet verborgen

thus lurk hidden

und lât uns in den sorgen?

and leave us in the cares?

wir wânden alle sîn verlor;n;

we thought all be lost;

biz iezuo hæte ich wol gesworn,

until now would-have I well sworn,

10725 daz ir niht lebende wæret.

that you not living were.

wie habt ir uns beswæret!

how have you us grieved!

iuwer kiel und iuwer liute

your keel and your people

die geswuoren wol noch hiute

they swore well still today

und habent ez dâ vûr, ir sît tât,

and hold it there for, you are dead,

10730 und sint mit micheler nôt

and are with great distress

her unz an dise naht beliben

hither until to this night remained

und heten daz inein getriben,

and had that together driven,

si wolten hînaht hinnen sîn.«

they would tonight hence be.«

»nein«, sprach diu guote künigîn,

»no«, spoke the good queen,

10735 »er lebet gesunder unde frô.«

»he lives healthy and glad.«

und Tristan der begunde dô

and Tristan he began then

britûnisch sprechen wider in:

Breton speak to him:

»Kurvenal«, sprach er, »gâ balde hin

»Kurvenal«, spoke he, »go quickly thither

und sage hin nider, mîn dinc stê wol,

and say thither down, my affair stand well,

und ich ez allez enden sol,

and I it all end shall,

10740

dâ nâch wir ûz sîn gesant.«

there for we out are sent.«

hie mite sô seite er ime zehant

here with so told he him at-once

sîne linge al von grunde,

his success all from ground,

so er ebeneste kunde.

as he most-evenly could.

nû er ime hete geseit

now he him had told

10745

sîn gelücke und sîn arbeit,

his fortune and his hardship,

»nu«, sprach er, »balde gâ hin nider,

»now«, spoke he, »quickly go thither down,

sage mînen lanthêrren wider

tell my land-lords back

und ouch den ritteren dar zuo,

and also the knights there to,

daz ir iegelîcher fruo

that of-them each-one early

10750

mit sînen dingen sî bereit,

with his things be ready,

wol gestrichen unde gekleit

well dressed and clothed

mit der allerbesten wât,

with the very-best garment,

die ir iegelîcher hât,

which of-them each-one has,

10755 und nemen mînes boten war;

and take of-my messenger heed;

swenne ich in den sende dar,

whenever I to-them the-one send thither,

sô rîten her ze hove ze mir.

so ride hither to court to me.

ouch sende ich morgen fruo ze dir,

also send I tomorrow early to thee,

sô sende mir den kleinen schrîn,

so send me the small shrine,

10760 dâ mîne kleinœde inne sîn,

where my jewels in are,

und mîniu kleider dâ mite,

and my clothes there with,

diu von dem allerbesten snite.

which of the very-best cut.

dich selben kleide ouch alsô wol

thee self clothe also so well

als ein höfsch ritter sol.«

as a courtly knight shall.«

10765 Kurvenal neic und kêrte dan.

Kurvenal bowed and turned thence.

Brangæne sprach: »wer ist der man?

Brangaene spoke: »who is the man?

in dunket wærlîche

him seems truly

hier inne ein himelrîche:

here within a heaven-kingdom:

weder ist er ritter oder kneht?«

whether is he knight or squire?«

»frouwe, swâ vür irn geseht,

»lady, wherever for you-him see,

10770

er ist ein ritter unde ein man;

he is a knight and a man;

dane habet keinen zwîvel an,

there have no doubt on,

daz disiu sunne nie beschein

that this sun never shone-on

tugenthafter herze kein.«

more-virtuous heart any.«

»â, sælic müeze er iemer sîn«,

»ah, blessed may he ever be«,

10775

sprach ietwedere künigîn

spoke each queen

und mîn frou Brangæne dermite,

and my lady Brangaene therewith,

diu höfsche und diu wol gesite.

the courtly and the well mannered.

Nu Kurvenal zem schiffe kam,

Now Kurvenal to-the ship came,

sîne rede ze handen genam

his speech to hands took

10780

dâ nâch, als ime was vür geleit,

there after, as him was before laid,

er seite in, alse im was geseit,

he told them, as him was told,

und ouch, wie er Tristanden vant.

and also, how he Tristan found.

nû gebârtten sî zehant,

now behaved they at-once,

- 10785 rehte alse der tôt ist gewesen
right as the dead is been
 und von dem tôde ist wider genesen:
and from the death is back bealed:
 als fröuten sî sich alle dô.
so rejoiced they themselves all then.
 dô wâren aber genuoge frô
then were however many glad
 durch die lantsuone mêre
for the land-reconciliation more
- 10790 dan durch Tristandes êre.
than for Tristan's honor.
 die nîdegen barûne
the envious barons
 si griffen an ir rûne
they reached at their whispering
 und an ir sprâchen wider als ê.
and at their parleys again as before.
 si zigen Tristanden aber dô mê
they accused Tristan again then more
- 10795 durch dise rîche linge
for this rich success
 zouberlîcher dinge;
of-sorcerous things;
 iegelîcher sprach besunder:
each-one spoke apart:
 »hie merket alle wunder,
»here mark all wonder,
 waz dirre man wunders kan.
what this man of-wonders can.
- 10800 jâ hêre, waz kan dirre man,
yes lord, what can this man,

daz er allez endet,

that he all finishes,

dar an er sich gewendet!«

there on he himself turns!«

The Court Assembles

XXX

On the day set for the combat the court fills, and nobody knows who will fight the steward. Tristan gives the three ladies his shrine of jewels, keeping only a girdle, a chaplet, and a clasp. He dresses, and the ladies admire him. His Cornishmen take seats in the hall in silence, since they do not know the language. The queen enters leading Isolde, and the poet describes the princess's gown, mantle, gold circlet, and bearing, whose glances rob many a man of himself.

Hie mite sô was ouch der tac komen,

Here with so was also the day come,

der dâ zem kampfe was genomen,

which there for-the combat was taken,

und was vil michel hêrschaft,

and was very great lordship,

des lantvolkes michel kraft

of-the land-folk great force

vor dem kûnege in dem sal.

before the king in the hall.

ouch was dâ maneger hande zal

also was there of-many kind talk

under den guoten knechten;

among the good fellows;

10805

- 10810 si frâgeten, wer dâ vehten
they asked, who there fight
 vür die maget Îsolde
for the maiden Isolde
 mit dem truhsæzen wolde.
with the steward would.
 diu frâge gie her unde hin
the question went hither and thither
 nune was et nieman under in,
now was just no-one among them,
- 10815 der iht hier umbe erkande.
who anything here about knew.
 under diu was ouch Tristande
under that was also to-Tristan
 sîn schrîn und sîniu kleider komen,
his shrine and his clothes come,
 dâ hete er sunder ûz genomen
there had he apart out taken
 drî gürtele den frouwen drîn,
three girdles for-the ladies three,
- 10820 daz keiserîn noch künigîn
that empress nor queen
 nie keinen bezzeren gewan,
never any better gained,
 schapel unde vürspan,
chaplet and brooch,
 seckeke unde vingerlîn
purses and rings
 der was ebene vol der schrîn,
of-them was evenly full the shrine,
- 10825 und was daz allez alsô guot,
and was that all so good,

daz niemer keines herzen muot
that never any heart's spirit

des gedenken möhte,
of-it think could,

waz ez bezzer töhte.
what it better should-avail.

des enkam ouch nie niht dervan,
of-it came also never anything thereof,

wan alse vil, daz Tristan
except as much, that Tristan

10830

im selben dervan genam:
for-him self thereof took:

einen gürtel, der im rehte kam,
a girdle, which to-him rightly came,

ein schapel unde ein spengelîn,
a chaplet and a little-clasp,

diu ime gebære mohten sîn.
which to-him fitting might be.

»ir schœnen«, sprach er, »alle drî,
»you fair-ones«, spoke he, »all three,

10835

disen schrîn und swaz dar inne sî,
this shrine and whatever there in be,

dâ mite sô schaffet alle
there with so dispose all

und tuot, swaz iu gevalle.«
and do, whatever you pleases.»

Mit disen mæren gieng er dan;

With these tidings went he thence;

10840 sîniu kleider leite er an

his clothes put he on

und kêrte dar zuo sînen pîn

and turned there to his pains

und fleiz sich, wie er sich dar î

and strove himself, how he himself there in

gefeitierte alsô wol,

fashioned so well,

als ein volmüete ritter sol.

as a spirited knight shall.

10845 ze wunsche stuonden ime ouch die.

to wish stood him also they.

nu er wider î zen frouwen gie

when he back in to-the ladies went

und si in begunden schouwen,

and they him began view,

nu begunden in die frouwen

now began him the ladies

durch ir gedanke lâzen gân.

through their thoughts let go.

10850 er dûhtes alle drî getân

he seemed-them all three made

schône unde sæleclîche.

beautifully and blessedly.

die drî sældenrîche,

the three blessed-ones,

si gedâhten alle in einer frist:

they thought all in one time:

»zwâre, dirre man der ist

»truly, this man he is

10855 ein manlich creatiure;

a manly creature;

sîn wât und sîn figure

his garment and his figure

die schephent wol an ime den man:

they create well in him the man:

si zement so wol ein ander an.

they befit so well one another on.

sîn dinc ist allez wol gewant.«

his affair is all well turned.«

Nu hete ouch Tristan besant

10860

Now had also Tristan summoned

sîne cumpanie: diu was komen

his company: it was come

und heten einen stuol genomen

and had a seat taken

nâch ein ander in dem sal.

after one another in the hall.

dâ gie diu michel werlde al

there went the great world all

und beschouweten besunder

10865

and viewed apart

der kleidere wunder,

of-the clothes wonder,

diu si an in sâhen.

whiche they on them saw.

genuoge dâ jâhen,

many there said,

ezn getrüege nie sô manic man

it bore never so many man

als ebenguotiu kleider an.

10870

so equally-good clothes on.

daz si aber alle stille swigen,

that they however all silently kept-silent,

dem lantgesinde rede verzigen,

to-the land-household speech refused,

daz geschach durch die geschiht,
that happened for the reason,
 sine kunden der lantsprâche niht.
they knew of-the land-language not.

10875 Hie mite sante ouch der künic in
Here with sent also the king in

einen boten nâch der künigîn,
a messenger for the queen,

daz sî ze hove kæme
that she to court should-come

und ir tochter zuo zir næme.
and her daughter to to-her should-take.

»Îsôt«, sprach sî, »wol ûf, gâ wir!
»Isolde«, spoke she, »well up, go we!

10880 hêr Tristan, sô belîbet ir:
lord Tristan, so remain you:

ich tuon zehant nâch iu gesant,
I do at-once for you sent,

sô neme iuch Brangæne an ir hant,
so take you Brangaene by her hand,

und gât ir zwei nâch uns dar in.«
and go you two after us there in.»

»gerne, frouwe künigîn.«
»gladly, lady queen.«

10885 Sus kam diu küniginne Îsôt,
Thus came the queen Isolde,

daz frôliche morgenrôt,
the joyful morning-red,

und fuorte ir sunnen an ir hant,
and led her sun by her hand,

daz wunder von Îrlant,
the wonder of Ireland,

die lichten maget Îsôte;
the bright maiden Isolde;

diu sleich ir morgenrôte

10890

she crept to-her morning-red

lîse unde stæteclîche mite

softly and steadily along

in einem spor, in einem trite,

in one track, in one step,

suoze gebildet über al,

sweetly formed over all,

lanc, ûf gewollen unde smal

tall, up swelling and slender

gestellet in der wæte,

10895

set in the garment,

als sî diu Minne dræte

as her the Love should-turn

ir selber zeinem vederspîl,

for-her self as-a falcon,

dem Wunsche zeinem endeziel,

to-the Wish as-a final-goal,

dâ vür er niemer komen kan.

there beyond he never come can.

si truoc von brûnem semît an

10900

she wore of brown samite on

roc unde mantel, in dem snite

gown and mantle, in the cut

von Franze, und was der roc dermite

of France, and was the gown there-with

da engegene, dâ die sîten

there toward, where the sides

sinkent ûf ir lîten,

sink onto her hips,

gefranzet unde geenget,

10905

fringed and narrowed,

nâhe an ir lîp getwenget

close on her body pressed

mit einem borten, der lac wol,

with a band, which lay well,

dâ der borte ligen sol.

where the band lie shall.

der roc der was ir heinlîch,

the gown it was her intimate,

10910 er tete sich nâhe zuo der lîch:

it did itself close to the body:

ern truoc an keiner stat hin dan,

it carried at no place thither off,

er suochte allenthalben an

it sought everywhere on

al von obene hin ze tal;

all from above thither to valley;

er nam den valt unde den val

it took the fold and the fall

10915 under den fûezen alse vil

under the feet as much

als iuwer iegelîcher wil.

as of-you each-one wants.

der mantel was ze flîze

the mantle was to diligence

mit hermîner wîze

with ermine's whiteness

innen al ûz gezieret,

inside all out adorned,

10920 bî zîlen geflottieret;

by rows set;

er was ze kurz noch ze lanc,

it was too short nor too long,

er swebete, dâ er nider sanc,

it floated, where it down sank,

weder zer erden noch enbor.

neither to-the earth nor aloft.

dâ stuont ein höfscher zobel vor

there stood a courtly sable before

der mâze, als in diu Mâze sneit,

of-the measure, as it the Measure cut,

10925

weder ze smal noch ze breit,

neither too narrow nor too broad,

gesprenget, swarz unde grâ:

sprinkled, black and gray:

swarz unde grâ diu wâren dâ

black and gray they were there

alsô gemischet under ein,

so mixed under one,

daz ir dewederez dâ schein.

that of-them neither there showed.

10930

der nam ouch sîne krumbe

it took also its curve

reht an der wîze al umbe,

right at the whiteness all around,

dâ der zobel die fuoge nimet,

where the sable the seam takes,

dâ diz bî dem sô wol gezimet,

where this by that so well befits,

diu tassel, dâ diu solten sîn,

the tassels, where they should be,

10935

dâ was ein kleinez snuorlîn

there was a little little-cord

von wîzen berlîn in getragen.

of white little-pearls in carried.

dâ hete diu schoene in geslagen

there had the fair in struck

ir dûmen von ir linken hant.

her thumb of her left hand.

- 10940 die rehten hete sî gewant
the right had she turned
 hin nider baz, ir wizzet wol,
thither down lower, you know well,
 dâ man den mantel sliezen sol,
where one the mantle fasten shall,
 und slôz in höfsczlîche inein
and closed it courtly together
 mit ir vingeren zwein:
with her fingers two:
- 10945 vûrbaz dâ viel er selbe wider
further there fell it itself back
 und nam den valt al zende nider,
and took the fold all to-the-end down,
 dâ man diz unde daz dâ sach,
where one this and that there saw,
 ich meine vederen unde tach.
I mean feathers and cover.
 man sachz innen und ûzen
one saw-it inside and outside
- 10950 und innerhalben lûzen
and inside lurk
 daz bilde, daz diu Minne
the image, which the Love
 an lîbe und an dem sinne
in body and in the sense
 sô schône hete gedræt:
so beautifully had turned:
 diu zwei, gedræt unde genæt,
the two, turned and sewn,
- 10955 diu envollebrâhten nie baz
they completed never better
 ein lebende bilde danne daz.
a living image than that.

gevedere schâchblicke

feathered robbing-glances

die flugen dâ snêdicke

they flew there snow-thick

schâchende dar unde dan:

robbing thither and thence:

ich wæne, Îsôt vil manegen man

I think, Isolde very many-a man

10960

sîn selbes dâ beroubete.

of-his self there robbed.

si truoc ûf ir houbete

she wore on her head

einen cirkel von golde

a circlet of gold

smal, alse er wesen solde,

slender, as it be should,

geworht mit spæhem sinne.

wrought with subtle sense.

10965

dâ lâgen gimmen inne,

there lay gems in,

erwünschete steine

wished-for stones

vil lieht und iedoch kleine,

very bright and yet small,

die besten von dem lande:

the best from the land:

smaragde und jachande,

emeralds and jacinths,

10970

saphîre und calzedône,

sapphires and chalcedonies,

und wâren die sô schône

and were they so beautifully

wâ unde wâ dar in geleit,

where and where there in laid,

daz wercmannes wîsheit

that workman's wisdom

10975 nâch rehter spæheite

by right subtlety

nie steine baz geleite.

never stones better laid.

dâ lûhte golt unde golt,

there shone gold and gold,

der cirkel unde Îsolt,

the circlet and Isolde,

enwiderstrît ein ander an.

in-rivalry one another on.

10980 da enwas kein alse wîse man,

there was no so wise man,

hæte er der steine niht gesehen,

had he the stones not seen,

daz er iemer hæte verjehen,

that he ever would-have avowed,

daz dâ kein cirkel wære:

that there any circlet were:

sô glîch und alse einbære

so like and so matching

10985 was ir hâr dem golde.

was her hair to-the gold.

Sus gieng Îsôt Îsolde,

Thus went Isolde Isolde,

diu tohter ir muoter bî,

the daughter her mother by,

frô unde aller sorgen frî.

glad and of-all cares free.

ir trite die wâren unde ir swanc

her steps they were and her sway

gemezzen weder kurz noch lanc

measured neither short nor long

10990

und iedoch beider mâze.

and yet of-both measure.

si was an ir gelâze

she was in her bearing

ûfreht und offenbære,

upright and open,

gelîch dem sperwære,

like to-the sparrow-hawk,

gestreichet alse ein papegân;

preened as a parrot;

10995

si liez ir ougen umbe gân

she let her eyes around go

als der valke ûf dem aste;

as the falcon on the branch;

ze linde noch ze vaste

too gently nor too hard

heten si beide ir weide.

had they both their pasture.

si weideten beide

they pastured both

11000

als ebene unde als lîse

so evenly and so softly

und in sô sûezer wîse,

and in so sweet manner,

daz dâ vil lûtzel ougen was,

that there very few eyes was,

in enwæren diu zwei spiegelglas

to-them unless-were the two mirror-glass

ein wunder und ein wunne.

a wonder and a bliss.

11005

diu wunne bernde sunne

the bliss bearing sun

si breite ir schîn über al,

she spread her shine over all,

si erfröute liute unde sal

she gladdened people and hall

slîchende neben ir muoter hin.

creeping beside her mother thither.

11010 si zwô si wâren under in

they two they were among them

in süezer unmuoze

in sweet occupation

mit zweier hande gruoze

with two kind greeting

grüezende unde nîgende,

greeting and bowing,

sprechende unde swîgende.

speaking and keeping-silent.

11015 ir reht was an in beiden

their right was in them both

besetzt unde bescheiden:

set and assigned:

ir eine gruozte, diu ander neic,

the one greeted, the other bowed,

diu muoter sprach, diu tohter sweic.

the mother spoke, the daughter was-silent.

diz triben die wol gezogen zwô:

this drove the well bred two:

11020 diz was ir unmuoze dô.

this was their occupation then.

The Steward Pressed

XXXI

The steward, backed by his kinsmen, demands his combat and asks where the ladies' champion is. The queen offers him a chance to withdraw; he refuses, insisting that he will have her daughter. She sends Paranis for the man, and the hall wonders who he can be. Brangaene enters leading Tristan by the hand, and the poet describes his gold-woven ciclatoun, net of pearls, and jeweled chaplet. The Cornishmen spring up to greet him, and the king and both queens rise to receive him.

Nu daz sich Îsôt unde Îsôt

Now that themselves Isolde and Isolde

diu sunne unde ir morgenrôt

the sun and her morning-red

heten nider gelâzen,

had down let,

dem kûnege bî gesâzen,

to-the king by sat,

nu nam der truhsæze allez war

now took the steward all heed

und frâgete her unde dar,

and asked hitber and thitber,

wâ der gewaltesære,

where the champion,

der frouwen kempfe wære.

the ladies' fighter were.

des was er unberihtet dâ.

of-it was he uninformed there.

sîne mâge nam er sâ:

his kinsmen took he at-once:

der was ein michel her umbe in.

of-them was a great army around him.

vür den kûnec sô gieng er hin.

before the king so went he thither.

11025

11030

dem gerihte antwurte er sich:

to-the court presented he himself:

»nu hêrre«, sprach er, »hie bin ich

now lord«, spoke he, »here am I

11035 und vordere mîn kampfreht.

and demand my combat-right.

wâ ist nû der guote kneht,

where is now the good fellow,

der mich an mînen êren

who me from my honors

hie wænet umbe kêren?

here thinks about turn?

ich hân noch friunde unde man.

I have still friends and men.

11040 ouch ist mîn reht sô guot hier an,

also is my right so good here on,

tuot mir daz lantreht, alse ez sol,

(if)-does me the land-right, as it shall,

ich geteidinge wol.

I plead well.

gewalt entsitze ich kleine,

force fear I little,

ir entuot ez danne al eine.«

you unless-do it then all alone.«

11045 »Truhsæze«, sprach die künigîn,

»Steward«, spoke the queen,

»sol dirre kampf unwendic sîn,

»shall this combat unavoidable be,

sone weiz ich rehte, waz ich tuo:

so-not know I rightly, what I do:

ich bin dar ungewarnet zuo.

I am there unwarned to.

und zwâre, woltest dûn noch lân
and truly, wouldst thou-it still leave

ûf solhe rede understân,
on such terms desist, 11050

daz Îsôt dirre mære
that Isolde of-this tale

ledic und âne wære,
free and without were,

truhsæze, zwâre, ez kæme dir
steward, truly, it would-come to-thee

ze also guoten staten als ir.«
to as good aid as her.»

»ledic?« sprach der ander dô.
»free?« spoke the other then. 11055

»jâ frouwe, ir tætet ouch alsô,
»yes lady, you would-do also so,

ir liezet ouch gewonnen spil.
you would-leave also won game.

swaz ir geredet, ich wæne, ich wil
whatever you speak, I think, I will

mit fromen und mit êren
with benefit and with honors

von disem spile kêren.
from this game turn. 11060

ich hæte michel arbeit
I would-have great hardship

unsinneclîchen an geleit,
senselessly on laid,

solte ich nû dar vone gân.
should I now there from go.

frouwe, ich wil iuwer tochter hân:
lady, I will your daughter have:

daz ist daz ende dar an.
that is the end there on. 11065

ir wizzet in sô wol, den man,
you know him so well, the man,

der den trachen dâ sluoc:
who the dragon there slew:

den bringet, so ist der rede genuoc.«
him bring, so is of-the speech enough.»

»Truhsæze«, sprach diu künigîn,
»Steward«, spoke the queen,

11070 »ich hære wol, ez muoz et sîn,
»I hear well, it must just be,
 ich muoz mîn selbe nemen war.«
I must of-me self take heed.»

si wincte Paranîse dar:
she beckoned Paranis thither:

»gâ hin«, sprach sî, »und brinc den man.«
»go thither«, spoke she, »and bring the man.»

nu sâhens alle ein ander an,
now looked-they all one another at,

11075 ritter und barûne.
knights and barons.

under in wart michel rûne,
among them was great whispering,

vil frâge und manic mære,
much question and many-a tale,

wer dirre kempfe wære.
who this champion were.

nune weste ez ir dekeiner dâ.
now knew it of-them none there.

11080 hie mite kam ouch geslichen sâ
here with came also crept at-once

diu stolze Brangæne,
the proud Brangaene,

daz schœne volmæne,
the fair full-moon,

und fuorte ze handen

and led by hands

ir geverten Tristanden.

her companion Tristan.

diu stolze und diu wol gesite

the proud and the well mannered

11085

si gieng im siteliche mite,

she went him mannerly along,

an lîbe und an gelâze

in body and in bearing

liutsælic ûz der mâze,

charming beyond the measure,

ir muotes stolz unde frî.

of-her spirit proud and free.

ouch gieng ir ir geverte bî

also went her her companion by

11090

in stolzlicher wîse;

in proud manner;

des dinc was ouch ze prîse

whose affair was also to prize

und ze wunder ûf geleit

and to wonder up laid

an iegelicher sælekeit,

in each-one blessedness,

diu den ritter schepfen sol:

which the knight create shall:

11095

ez stuont allez an im wol,

it stood all on him well,

daz ze ritters lobe stât.

what to knight's praise stands.

sîn geschepfede und sîn wât

his form and his garment

die gehullen wunneclîche inein:

they harmonized blissfully together:

- 11100 si bildeten under in zwein
they fashioned between them two
 einen ritterlichen man.
a knightly man.
 er truoc ciclâdes kleider an,
he wore ciclatoun clothes on,
 diu wâren ûzer mâze rîch,
they were beyond measure rich,
 fremede unde lobelîch.
strange and praiseworthy.
- 11105 sine wâren niht von hove gegeben:
they were not from court given:
 daz golt daz was dar în geweben
the gold that was there in woven
 niht in der hovemâze.
not in the court-measure.
 die sîdînen strâze
the silken road
 die kôs man kûmelîche dâ:
it perceived one scarcely there:
- 11110 si wâren wâ und wâ
they were where and where
 sô mit dem golde ertrenket
so with the gold drowned
 und in daz golt versenket,
and into the gold sunk,
 daz man daz werc dâ kûme sach.
that one the work there barely saw.
 ein netze daz was ûf daz tach
a net that was over the cover
- 11115 von kleinen berlîn getragen,
of small little-pearls carried,
 die maschen also wît geslagen,
the mesbes as wide struck,

als ein hant an der breite hât.

as a hand in the breadth has.

dâ durch sô bran der ciclât

there through so burned the ciclatoun

reht alse ein glüender kol.

right as a glowing coal.

er was von timât innen vol

it was of dimity inside full

11120

vil brûner danne ein vîolate,

very browner than a violet,

reht ebenbrûn der gloien blate.

right even-brown the gladiola's leaf

der selbe phelle der tet sich

the same silk it did itself

an den valt und an den strich

to the fold and to the stroke

alse nâhe und alse wol,

as near and as well,

11125

alse ein phelle beste sol:

as a silk best shall:

er stuont dem lobelîchen man

it stood the praiseworthy man

wol unde lobelîchen an

well and praiseworthy on

und alle wîs nâch sîner ger.

and all ways after his desire.

ûf sînem houbete truoc er

on his head wore he

11130

von spæhem werke spæhen schîn,

of subtle work subtle shine,

ein wunneclîch schapelekîn

a blissful little-chaplet

daz rehte alsam ein kerze bran:

that right just-as a candle burned:

dâ lûhten alse sterne van
there shone as stars from

11135 topâzen und sardîne,
topazes and sards,

krisolîten und rubîne.
chrysolites and rubies.

ez was licht unde klâr,
it was bright and clear,

ez hete im houbet unde hâr
it had him head and hair

klârlichen umbevungen.
clearly encircled.

11140 sus kam er î n gegangen
thus came he in walking

rîch unde hôhe gemuot.
rich and high minded.

sîn gebâr was hêrlîch unde guot,
his bearing was splendid and good,

al sîn geverte daz was rîch:
all his company that was rich:

er was selbe rîchlich
he was himself rich

11145 an allen sînen sachen.
in all his affairs.

si begunden ime rûm machen,
they began him room make,

dâ er zem palas î n gie.
where he to-the palace in went.

hie mite sô wurden sîn ouch die
here with so became of-him also those

von Kurnewâlê gewar:
from Cornwall aware:

11150 si sprungen frôlîche dar,
they sprang joyfully thither,

si gruozten unde enpfiegen,

they greeted and received,

dâ sî bihanden giengen,

where they hand-in-hand went,

Brangænen und Tristanden;

Brangaene and Tristan;

si nâmen sî ze handen

they took them by hands

die geverten beide, sî und in,

the companions both, her and him,

und condewiertens under in

and conducted-them among them

schône und hêrlîche

beautifully and splendidly

hin vür daz künicrîche.

thither before the royalty.

künek, ietwedere künigîn

king, each queen

si tâten ime ir tugende schîn:

they did him their virtue's show:

si stuonden ûf und gruozten in.

they stood up and greeted him.

Tristan der neic in allen drîn.

Tristan he bowed to-them all three.

dar nâch gruozten si drîe

there after greeted they three

Tristandes cumpanîe

Tristan's company

hêrlîche und alsô wol,

splendidly and so well,

als man von rehte hêrren sol.

as one by right lords shall.

11155

11160

11165

The Tongue

XXXII

*The Cornish once sent as tribute recognize their fathers and kinsmen among
Tristan's men, and many weep for joy. Before the court the steward claims the
dragon and shows its head; Tristan has it opened, and there is no tongue in it.
He produces the tongue, and the lords rule that whoever took it killed the dragon.
When the king grants Tristan Isolde, the steward cries falsehood and demands
combat; his kinsmen talk him out of it, and the court mocks him.*

Hie mite kam al diu ritterschaft

Here with came all the knighthood

zuo gedrungen herhaft

to thronged proudly

und gruozten die geste,

and greeted the guests,

11170 der geverte ir keiner weste.

whose companions of-them none knew.

jene bekanden aber iesâ

those recognized however at-once

ir vetere unde ir mâge dâ,

their fathers and their kinsmen there,

die von Kurnewâle zîrlant

who from Cornwall to-Ireland

ze zinse wâren gesant.

as tribute were sent.

11175 dâ lief vor fröuden manic man

there ran for joys many-a man

vetere unde mâge weinende an.

fathers and kinsmen weeping on.

fröude und klage der was dâ vil,

joy and lament of-it was there much,

der ich niht sunder rechen wil.

of-which I not apart reckon will.

der künic dô Tristanden nam

the king then Tristan took

selb andern, alse er dar kam,

self second, as he thither came,

11180

in und Brangænen die mein ich,

him and Brangaene them mean I,

unde sazte sî ze sich

and set them to himself

und fuogte aber under in daz,

and arranged however among them that,

daz Tristan innerhalben saz.

that Tristan inside sat.

sô sâzen anderhalben sîn

so sat on-the-other-side of-him

11185

die sæligen zwô künigîn.

the blessed two queens.

ritter und barûne,

knights and barons,

Tristandes cumpanjûne,

Tristan's companions,

die sâzen ûf den esterîch;

they sat on the floor;

und aber alsô, daz iegelîch

and however so, that each

11190

dem gerihte under ougen sach,

the court under eyes saw,

und sâhen, swaz sô dâ geschach.

and saw, whatever so there happened.

Hie mite huop von Tristande

Here with raised about Tristan

daz gesinde von dem lande

the household of the land

manic gerûne und manic zal,

many-a whisper and many-a talk,

11195

ich weiz ez wol, daz in dem sal

I know it well, that in the hall

ûz maneges mannes munde

out-of many-a man's mouth

lobebrunnen vil begunde

praise-springs many began

ûf wallen unde enspringen

up well and spring-forth

11200 von allen sînen dingen:

of all his things:

si sageten ime lob unde prîs

they told him praise and prize

maneger hande und manege wîs.

of-many kind and many-a way.

ir genuoge sprâchen daz:

of-them many spoke that:

»wâ geschuof ie got figure baz

»where created ever God figure better

11205 ze ritterlîchem rehte?

to knightly right?

hî, wie ist er ze vehte

ah, how is he for fight

und ze kampfwîse

and for combat-manner

gestellet sô ze prîse!

set so to prize!

wie sint diu kleider, diu er treit,

how are the clothes, which he wears,

11210 sô rîlîchen ûf geleit!

so richly up laid!

ezn gesach nie man in Îrlant

it saw never man in Ireland

sus rehte keiserlîch gewant.

thus right imperial garment.

sîn massenîe diu ist gekleit

his household it is clothed

mit küniclicher rîcheit.

with kingly richness.

und wârlîche, swer er sî,

and truly, whoever he be,

er ist muotes unde guotes frî.«

he is of-spirit and of-goods free.»

alsolher rede was dâ genuoc.

of-such speech was there enough.

der truhsæze der truoc

the steward he bore

den ezzich in den ougen.

the vinegar in the eyes.

diu rede ist âne lougen.

the speech is without lie.

Nu hiez man ruofen in den sal

Now bade one call into the hall

eine stille über al.

a silence over all.

diz was getân; nu daz geschach,

this was done; now that happened,

daz nieman wort noch halbez sprach,

that no-one word nor half spoke,

der künic sprach: »truhsæze, sprich,

the king spoke: »steward, speak,

wes vermizzest dû dich?«

of-what presumest thou thyself?«

»hêrre, ich sluoc den serpent.«

»lord, I slew the serpent.«

der gast stuont ûf und sprach zehant:

the guest stood up and spoke at-once:

»hêrre, ir entâtet.« »hêrre, ich tete,

»lord, you not-did.« »lord, I did,

11215

11220

11225

11230 ich bewære ez wol an dirre stete.«

I prove it well at this place.«

»mit waz bewærde?« sprach Tristan.

»with what proof?« spoke Tristan.

»diz houbet, seht, daz brâhte ich dan.«

»this head, see, that brought I thence.«

»hêrre künec«, sprach Tristan dô,

»lord king«, spoke Tristan then,

»sît er des houbetes sô

»since he of-the head so

11235 ze bewærde wil jehen,

as proof will avow,

sô heizet in daz houbet sehen:

so bid into the head see:

vindet man die zungen dâ,

(if)-finds one the tongue there,

ich entwîche mînes rehtes sâ

I withdraw from-my right at-once

und wil von mînem kriege gân.«

and will from my claim go.«

11240 sus wart daz houbet ûf getân

thus was the head up done

und niht dar inne funden.

and nothing there in found.

Tristan hiez an den stunden

Tristan bade at the hours

die zungen bringen: diu kam dar.

the tongue bring: it came thither.

»ir hêrren«, sprach er, »nemet war

»you lords«, spoke he, »take heed

11245 und seht, ob sî des trachen sî.«

and see, whether it of-the dragon be.«

nu stuonden sîs im alle bî
now stood they-it him all by

und jâhens al gemeine
and avowed-it all in-common

wan der truhsæze al eine,
except the steward all alone,

der wolte ez widerreden ie;
he would it gainsay ever;

nune wiste er aber rehte wie: 11250
now-not knew he however rightly how:

der veige der begunde
the doomed-one he began

mit zungen und mit munde,
with tongue and with mouth,

mit rede und mit gedanken
with speech and with thoughts

schrangen unde wanken;
stagger and waver;

er enkunde sprechen noch gelân, 11255
he not-could speak nor keep-silent,

er enwiste, waz gebærde hân.
he not-knew, what bearing have.

»ir hêrren alle«, sprach Tristan,
»you lords all«, spoke Tristan,

»hie merket alle wunder an,
»here mark all wonder on,

wie sich diz hie zuo habe getragen:
how itself this here to have carried:

11260 dô ich den trachen hete erslagen
when I the dragon had slain

und ich ime mit lîhter arbeit
and I it with light hardship

ûz sînem tôten rachen sneit
out-of its dead jaws cut

dise zungen und si dannen truoc,
this tongue and it thence carried,

daz er in sider ze tôde sluoc.«
that he it since to death struck.»

11265 die hêrren sprâchen alle:
the lords spoke all:

»an disem lantschalle
»in this land-rumor

ist lûzel êren bejaget.
is little honor gained.

swaz ieman sprichet oder gesaget,
whatever anyone speaks or says,

unser iegelîch der weiz daz wol,
of-us each he knows that well,

11270 ob man ze rehte reden sol,
if one by right speak shall,

der aller êrste dar kam
who of-all first thither came

und die zungen dâ nam,
and the tongue there took,

der sluoc ouch den serpent.«
he slew also the serpent.»

des wart gevolget zehant.
of-it was agreed at-once.

- Nu daz dem valschen gebrast 11275
Now that to-the false-one failed
- und der valschelôse gast
and the falseless guest
- des hoves volge gewan,
of-the court agreement gained,
- »hêrre kûnec«, sprach aber Tristan,
»lord king«, spoke again Tristan,
- »nu weset der triuwen gemant:
»now be of-the faithfulness reminded:
- iuwer tochter stât in mîner hant.« 11280
your daughter stands in my hand.«
- der kûnec sprach: »hêrre, des gihe ich,
the king spoke: »lord, of-it avow I,
- als ir gelobetet wider mich.«
as you promised toward me.«
- »nein hêrre«, sprach der valsche dô,
»no lord«, spoke the false-one then,
- »durch got, ensprechet niht alsô.
»for God, speak not so.
- swie ez hier umbe ergangen sî, 11285
however it here about gone be,
- dâ ist zewâre untriuwe bî
there is truly unfaithfulness by
- und ist mit valsche hie zuo komen.
and is with falsehood here to come.
- ê aber mir werde benomen
before however to-me be taken
- mîn êre mit unrehte,
my honor with wrong,
- si muoz mir ê mit vehte 11290
she must to-me before with fight
- und mit kampfe hine gân:
and with combat hence go:

hêrre, ich wil den kampf bestân.«

lord, I will the combat undertake.«

»truhsæze«, sprach diu wîse Îsôt,

»steward«, spoke the wise Isolde,

»du teidingest âne nôt:

»thou pleadest without need:

11295 mit wem wildû kampfrehen?

with whom wilt-thou combat-claim?

dirre hêrre wil niht vehten:

this lord will not fight:

er hât doch an Îsolde

he has yet in Isolde

behabet, daz er wolde.

obtained, what he would.

er wære tumber danne ein kint,

he would-be more-foolish than a child,

11300 und væhte er mit dir umbe den wint.«

and fought he with thee about the wind.«

»war umbe, frouwe?« sprach Tristan,

»what for, lady?« spoke Tristan,

»ê danne er jæhe, daz wirn hier an

»before than he should-avow, that we here on

gewalten unde unrehten,

use-force and do-wrong,

ich wil ê mit im vehten.

I will before with him fight.

11305 hêrre unde frouwe, sprechet dar,

lord and lady, speak thither,

gebietet ime daz, daz er var

command him that, that he go

wol balde wâfenen sich:

very quickly arm himself:

bereite sich, als tuon ich mich.«

prepare himself, as do I myself.«

- Nu daz der truhsæze sach,
Now that the steward saw,
- daz sich diu rede ze kampfe brach, 11310
that itself the speech to combat broke,
- sîne mâge und sîne man
his kinsmen and his men
- die nam er alle und gie dan
them took he all and went thence
- an eine sprâche sunder
to a parley apart
- und suochte rât hier under.
and sought counsel here under.
- nu dûhte sî daz mære 11315
now seemed-to them the tale
- sô rehte lasterbære,
so right shameful,
- daz er dâ lützel râtes vant.
that he there little of-counsel found.
- ir iegelîcher sprach zehant:
of-them each-one spoke at-once:
- »truhsæze, dîniu tagedinc
»steward, thy pleadings
- diu heten böesen ursprinc, 11320
they had wicked origin,
- ze böesem ende sints ouch komen.
to wicked end are-they also come.
- wes hâst dû dich an genomen?
of-what hast thou thyself on taken?
- wiltû dich mit unrehte
(if)-wilt-thou thyself with wrong
- bieten ze vehete,
offer to fight,
- daz gât dir wætlich an daz leben. 11325
that goes thee likely on the life.

waz râtes muge wir dir gegeben?

what of-counsel may we thee give?

hie enhœret rât noch êre zuo:

here not-belongs counsel nor honor to:

verliusest dû daz leben nuo

(if)-losest thou the life now

ze gâr verlornen êre,

for wholly lost honor,

11330 so ist aber des schaden noch mêre.

so is however of-the harm still more.

uns dunket alle und sehen daz wol,

us seems all and see that well,

der wider dich dâ vehten sol,

who against thee there fight shall,

der ist ein geherzet man zer nôt.

he is a hearted man in-the need.

bestâstun, zwâre ez ist dîn tôt.

(if)-fightest-thou-him, truly it is thy death.

11335 sît dich des vâlandes rât

since thee the devil's counsel

verrâten an den êren hât,

betrayed in the honors has,

so behabe dînen lîp doch.

so keep thy body yet.

versuoche unde besich noch,

try and see still,

ob diz laster und die lüge

whether this disgrace and the lie

11340 ieman hin gelegen mûge

anyone away lay may

mit keiner slahte mære.«

with any kind tale.»

dô sprach der lügenære:

then spoke the liar:

»wie welt ir, daz ich daz getuo?«

»how will you, that I that do?«

»dâ râte wir dir kurze zuo:

»there advise we thee briefly to:

gâ wider in unde gich,

go back in and declare,

11345

dîne friunt die heizen dich

thy friends they bid thee

dise vorderunge varen lân:

this claim fare let:

nu wellestû dervone gân.«

now wilt-thou therefrom go.«

der truhsæze tete alsô.

the steward did so.

er gie wider in und seite dô,

he went back in and said then,

11350

sîne mâge und sîne man

his kinsmen and his men

die hæten in genomen dâ van.

they had him taken there from.

nu wolte er ouch dâ von sîn.

now would he also there from be.

»truhsæze«, sprach diu künigîn,

»steward«, spoke the queen,

»daz enwânde ich niemer geleben,

»that thought I never live-to-see,

11355

daz du iemer soltest ûf gegeben

that thou ever shouldst up give

alse gâr gewonnen spil.«

so wholly won game.«

alsolhes spottes wart dâ vil

of-such mockery was there much

getriben über den palas.

driven over the palace.

- 11360 **der arme truhsæze was**
the poor steward was
- ir gîge unde ir rotte;**
their fiddle and their rote;
- si triben in mit spotte**
they drove him with mockery
- umbe und umbe als einen bal.**
about and about as a ball.
- dâ wart von spotte michel schal.**
there was of mockery great clamor.
- 11365 **sus nam der valsch ein ende**
thus took the falsehood an end
- mit offênlicher schende.**
with open disgrace.

The Love Potion

XXXIII

The king tells the court who Tristan is, and the lords welcome the peace. Tristan and Mark's barons swear Cornwall to Isolde as her morning gift, with England besides, and Gurmun gives Isolde's hand into the hand of Tristan, still her enemy. At Tristan's request the tribute hostages go free with her. The queen brews a love potion and gives it to Brangaene, to be poured for Isolde and Mark alone. Isolde parts from her parents in tears, and the ship sails.

- Do disiu rede geendet was,**
When this speech ended was,
- der künic seite in den palas**
the king told in the palace
- sînes landes cumpanjûnen,**
bis land's companions,
- 11370 **rittern und barûnen,**
knights and barons,

daz diz Tristan wære,

that this Tristan were,

und kunte in diz mære,

and made-known them this tale,

als er ez hete vernomen,

as he it had heard,

war umbe er zÎrlant wære komen

what for he to-Ireland were come

und wie er gelobet hæte,

and how he promised had,

11375

er solte ez ime dâ stæte

he should it him there firm

mit Markes fürsten machen

with Mark's princes make

mit allen den sachen,

with all the matters,

als er im vor benande.

as he him before named.

daz gesinde von Îrlande

the household from Ireland

11380

was dirre mære sêre frô.

was of-this tidings sorely glad.

die lanthêrren sprâchen dô,

the land-lords spoke then,

daz disiu suone wære

that this reconciliation were

gevellic unde gebære,

fitting and seemly,

wan langez hazzen under in

for long bating among them

11385

tribe ie die zît mit schaden hin.

should-drive ever the time with harm away.

Der künec gebôt unde bat,
The king commanded and asked,

daz in Tristan an der stat
that him Tristan at the place

der rede gewis tæte,
of-the speech certain should-make,

11390 als er ime gelobet hæte.
as he him promised had.

er tete ouch alsô: Tristan
he did also so: Tristan

und alle sînes hêrren man
and all his lord's men

die swuoren zuo dem mâle
they swore at the time

daz lant ze Kurnewâle
the land of Cornwall

11395 ze morgengâbe Îsolde,
as morning-gift to-Isolde,

und daz si wesen solde
and that she be should

frouwe über allez Engellant.
lady over all England.

hie mite bevalch Gurmûn zehant
here with commended Gurmûn at-once

Îsolde hant von hande
Isolde's hand from hand

11400 ir vînde Tristande.
to-her enemy Tristan.

ir vînde spriche ich umbe daz,
her enemy speak I for that,

si was im dannoch gehaz.
she was him still hostile.

Tristan der nams an sîne hant:
Tristan he took-her by his hand:

»künek«, sprach er, »hêrre von Îrlant,
»king«, spoke he, »lord of Ireland,

wir biten iuch, mîn frouwe und ich,
we ask you, my lady and I,

11405

daz ir durch sî und ouch durch mich,
that you for her and also for me,

ez sîn ritter oder kint,
it be knights or children,

die her ze zinse gegeben sint
who hither as tribute given are

von Kurnewâle und von Engelant,
from Cornwall and from England,

die suln in mîner frouwen hant
they shall in my lady's band

11410

billîchen und von rehte sîn,
rightly and by right be,

wan si ist der lande künigîn,
for she is of-the lands queen,

daz ir ir die lâzet frî.«
that you to-her them let free.»

»vil gerne«, sprach der künek, »daz sî:
»very gladly«, spoke the king, »that be:

ez ist wol mit mînen minnen,
it is well with my loves,

11415

varents alle mit iu hinnen.«
fare-they all with you hence.»

Der mære wart manc herze frô.

Of-the tidings became many-a heart glad.

Tristan der hiez gewinnen dô

Tristan he bade gain then

einen kiel ze sînem kiele

a keel for his keel

11420 und daz ouch der geuele

and that also it should-please

im selben und Îsolde

him self and Isolde

und dâ zuo, swem er wolde.

and there to, whomever he would.

und also ouch der bereite wart,

and when also it ready became,

Tristan bereite sich zer vart.

Tristan prepared himself for-the journey.

11425 in allen den enden,

in all the ends,

dâ man die ellenden

where one the exiles

ze hove und in dem lande vant,

at court and in the land found,

die besande man zehant.

them summoned one at-once.

Die wîle und sich ouch Tristan

The while and himself also Tristan

11430 mit sînen lantgesellen dan

with his land-comrades thence

bereite und berihte,

prepared and arranged,

die wîle sô betihte

the while so composed

Îsôt diu wîse künigîn

Isolde the wise queen

in ein glasevezzelîn

into a glass-little-vessel

einen tranc von minnen

a drink of love

11435

mit alsô kleinen sinnen

with so subtle senses

ûf geleit und vor bedâht,

up laid and before considered,

mit solher krefte vollebrâht,

with such strength completed,

mit sweme sîn ieman getranc,

with whomever of-it anyone drank,

den muose er âne sînen danc

him must he without his thanks

11440

vor allen dingen meinen,

before all things love,

und er dâ wider in einen;

and he there against him alone;

in was ein tôt unde ein leben,

to-them was a death and a life,

ein triure, ein fröude samet gegeben.

a sadness, a joy together given.

den tranc den nam diu wîse,

the drink it took the wise,

11445

si sprach Brangænen lîse:

she spoke to-Brangaene softly:

»Brangæne«, sprach si, »niftel mîn,

»Brangaene«, spoke she, »niece mine,

lâ dir die rede niht swære sîn,

let to-thee the speech not heavy be,

du solt mit mîner tochter hin;
thou shalt with my daughter thither;

11450 dâ nâch sô stelle dînen sin,
there after so set thy sense,

swaz ich dir sage, daz vernim:
whatever I thee tell, that hear:

diz glas mit disem tranke nim,
this glass with this drink take,

daz habe in dîner huote.
that have in thy keeping.

hüete es vor allem guote;
guard it before all goods;

11455 sich, daz es ûf der erde
see, that it on the earth

ieman innen werde.
anyone aware become.

bewar mit allem flîze,
guard with all diligence,

daz es ieman enbîze;
that it anyone taste;

flîze dich wol starke,
strive thyself well strongly,

11460 swenne Îsôt unde Marke
when Isolde and Mark

inein der minne komen sîn,
together of-the love come are,

sô schenke in disen tranc vür wîn
so pour them this drink for wine

und lâ sin trinken ûz inein.
and let them-it drink out together.

bewar daz, daz sîn mit in zwein
guard that, that of-it with them two

11465 ieman enbîze, daz ist sin;
anyone taste, that is sense;

noch selbe entrinc es niht mit in.
nor thyself drink it not with them.

der tranc der ist von minnen:
the drink it is of love:

daz habe in dînen sinnen.
that have in thy senses.

ich bevilhe dir Îsôte
I commend to-thee Isolde

vil tiure und vil genôte. 11470
very dearly and very closely.

an ir sô lît mîn beste leben.
on her so lies my best life.

ich unde sî sîn dir ergeben
I and she are to-thee given

ûf alle dîne sælekeit:
on all thy blessedness:

hie mite sî dir genuoc geseit.«
here with be to-thee enough said.»

»trût frouwe«, sprach Brangæne dô,
»dear lady«, spoke Brangæne then, 11475

»ist iuwer beider wille alsô,
»(if)-is of-you of-both will so,

sô sol ich gerne mit ir varn,
so shall I gladly with her fare,

ir êre und al ir dinc bewarn,
her honor and all her affair guard,

sô ich iemer beste kan.«
as I ever best can.»

Urloup nam dô Tristan 11480
Leave took then Tristan

und al sîn liut hie unde dort.
and all his people here and there.

si schieden ze Weisefort

they parted at Weisefort

mit michelen fröuden abe.

with great joys off.

nu volgete ime unz in die habe

now followed him until into the harbor

11485 durch Îsôte minne

for Isolde's love

künec unde küniginne

king and queen

und al ir massenîe.

and all their household.

sîn unverwânde amîe,

his unexpected beloved,

sîn unverwantiu herzenôt,

his unforeseen heart's-distress,

11490 diu liechte wunneclîche Îsôt,

the bright blissful Isolde,

diu was im zallen zîten

she was him at-all times

weinende an der sîten;

weeping at the side;

ir vater, ir muoter beide

her father, her mother both

vertriben mit manegem leide

spent with much sorrow

11495 die selben kurzen stunde.

the same short hour.

manec ouge dâ begunde

many-a eye there began

riezen unde werden rôt.

drip and become red.

Îsôt was maneges herzen nôt:

Isolde was many-a heart's distress:

si bar vil manegem herzen

she bore very many-a heart

tougenlîchen smerzen.

secret pain.

11500

diu weineten genôte

they wept closely

ir ougen wunne Îsôte.

their eyes' bliss Isolde.

dâ was gemeine weine:

there was common weeping:

si weineten gemeine

they wept in-common

vil herzen und vil ougen

many hearts and many eyes

11505

offenlîche und tougen.

openly and secretly.

und aber Îsôt und aber Îsôt,

and again Isolde and again Isolde,

diu sunne unde ir morgenrôt,

the sun and her morning-red,

und ouch daz volmæne,

and also the full-moon,

diu schœne Brangæne,

the fair Brangaene,

11510

dô sî sich muosen scheiden,

when they themselves must part,

diu eine von den beiden,

the one from the both,

dô sach man jâmer unde leit:

then saw one misery and sorrow:

diu getriuwelîche sicherheit

the faithful security

schiet sich mit manegem leide.

parted itself with much sorrow.

11515

Îsôt kuste si beide

Isolde kissed them both

dicke und ze manegem mâle.

often and at many-a time.

Nu die von Kurnewâl

Now those from Cornwall

unde ouch Îrlandære,

and also Irishmen,

11520 der frouwen volgære,

the ladies' followers,

alle ze schiffe wâren komen

all to ship were come

und heten urloup genomen,

and had leave taken,

Tristan der gie ze jungest in:

Tristan he went at-the last in:

diu liechte junge künigîn,

the bright young queen,

11525 diu bluome von Îrlant,

the flower of Ireland,

Îsôt diu gieng im an der hant

Isolde she went him at the hand

trûric unde sêre unfrô.

sad and sorely unglad.

si zwei si nigen dem lande dô

they two they bowed to-the land then

und bâten den gotes segen

and asked the God's blessing

11530 der liute und des landes pflegen.

of-the people and of-the land care.

si stiezen an und fuoren dan.

they pushed off and went thence.

mit hôher stimme huobens an

with high voice raised-they on

und sungen eines unde zwir:

and sang once and twice:

»in gotes namen varen wir«,

»in God's name fare we«,

und strichen allez hinewart.

and struck ever onward.

11535

At Sea

XXXIV

At sea Isolde weeps, and when Tristan comforts her she thrusts him off: he killed her uncle and tricked her away from home. He answers that a rich queen abroad fares better than a poor one at home; she says she would rather have had the steward. When the ladies grow seasick they put into a harbor. Tristan asks for a drink, and a young maid takes the flask for wine. Both drink. Brangaene sees the flask, throws it into the sea, and laments that it is their death.

Nu was den frouwen zuo ir vart

Now was to-the ladies for their voyage

mit Tristandes râte

with Tristan's counsel

ein kielkemenâte

a keel-chamber

nâch heinlîcher sache

for private matter

gegeben ze ir gemache.

given for their comfort.

11540

dâ was diu küniginne

there was the queen

mit ir juncfrouwen inne

with her young-ladies within

und mit in lützel kein man

and with them scarcely any man

wan underwîlen Tristan:

except at-times Tristan:

11545 der gie wîlent dar in

he went sometimes there in

und trôste die künigîn,

and comforted the queen,

dâ si weinende saz.

where she weeping sat.

diu weinde unde klagete daz,

she wept and lamented that,

daz si alsô von ir lande,

that she so from her land,

11550 dâ sî die liute erkande,

where she the people knew,

und von ir friunden allen schiet

and from her friends all parted

und fuor mit der unkunden diet,

and went with the unknown folk,

sine wiste war oder wie.

she-not knew whither or how.

sô trôste sî Tristan ie,

so comforted her Tristan ever,

11555 so er suozeste kunde,

as he most-sweetly could,

ze iegelîcher stunde,

at each-one hour,

alse er zuo ir triure kam.

when he to her sadness came.

zwischen sîn arme er si nam

between his arms he her took

vil suoze unde lîse

very sweetly and softly

und niuwan in der wîse

and only in the manner

11560

als ein man sîne frouwen sol.

as a man his lady shall.

der getriuwe der versach sich wol,

the faithful he expected himself well,

daz er der schœnen wære

that he to-the fair were

ein senfte zuo ir swære,

an ease for her grief,

und also dicke, als ez ergie,

and as often, as it happened,

11565

daz er sîn arme an sî verlie,

that he his arms on her let,

so gedâhte ie diu schœne Îsôt

so thought ever the fair Isolde

an ir œheimes tût

of her uncle's death

und sprach ie danne wider in:

and spoke ever then against him:

»lât stân, meister, habet iuch hin,

»let stand, master, keep yourself away,

11570

tuot iuwer arme hin dan!

take your arms away off!

ir sît ein harte mûelîch man:

you are a very troublesome man:

war umbe rüeret ir mich?»

what for touch you me?»

»ei, schœne, missetuon ich?»

»ah, fair, misdo I?»

- 11575 »jâ ir, wan ich bin iu gehaz.«
»yes you, for I am to-you hostile.«
 »sæligiu«, sprach er, »umbe waz?«
»blessed-one«, spoke he, »about what?«
 »ir sluoget mînen œheim.«
»you slew my uncle.«
 »deist doch versüenet.« »des al ein:
»that-is yet atoned.« »of-it all one:
 ir sît mir doch unmære,
you are to-me yet indifferent,
- 11580 wan ich wære âne swære
for I would-be without grief
 und âne sorge, enwæret ir.
and without care, unless-were you.
 ir alterseine habet mir
you alone have me
 disen kumber allen ûf geleit
this trouble all up laid
 mit pârat und mit kûndekeit.
with trickery and with cunning.
- 11585 waz hât iuch mir ze schaden gesant
what has you me to harm sent
 von Kurnewâle in Îrlant?
from Cornwall into Ireland?
 die mich von kinde hânt erzogen,
who me from child have raised,
 den habet ir mich nu an ertrogen
from-them have you me now off tricked
 und fûeret mich, in weiz wâ hin.
and lead me, I-not know where away.
- 11590 ine weiz, wie ich verkoufet bin
I-not know, how I sold am
 und enweiz ouch, waz mîn werden sol.«
and not-know also, what of-me become shall.«

»nein, schœne Îsôt, gehabet iuch wol!

»no, fair Isolde, bear yourself well!

jâ müget ir michel gerne sîn

yes may you much gladly be

in fremede ein rîchiu künigîn

in foreign-land a rich queen

dan in der künde arm unde schwach:

than in the known-land poor and weak:

11595

in fremedem lande êre unde gemach

in foreign land honor and comfort

und schame in vater rîche,

and shame in father's realm,

diu smackent ungelîche.«

they taste unlike.«

»jâ, meister Tristan«, sprach diu maget,

»yes, master Tristan«, spoke the maiden,

»ich nâme ê, swaz ir mir gesaget,

»I would-take before, whatever you me say,

11600

eine mæzlîche sache

a moderate matter

mit liebe und mit gemache,

with love and with comfort,

dan ungemach und arbeit

than discomfort and hardship

bî micheler rîcheit.«

with great richness.«

»ir redet wâr«, sprach Tristan;

»you speak truth«, spoke Tristan;

11605

»swâ man aber gehalten kan

»where one however have can

die rîcheit bî gemache,

the richness with comfort,

die sæligen zwô sache

the blessed two things

die loufent baz gemeine

they run better together

11610 danne ietwedere al eine.

than each all alone.

nu sprechet, wære ez dâ zuo komen,

now say, were it there to come,

daz ir müeset haben genomen

that you must have taken

den truhsæzen ze manne,

the steward as husband,

wie füere ez aber danne?

how would-fare it however then?

11615 ich weiz wol, sô wæret ir frô.

I know well, so would-be you glad.

und danket ir mir danne alsô,

and thank you me then so,

daz ich iu kam ze trôste

that I you came to comfort

und iuch von ime erlôste?«

and you from him freed?«

»des wirt iu spâte«, sprach diu maget,

»of-it becomes to-you late«, spoke the maiden,

11620 »von mir iemer danc gesaget;

»from me ever thanks said;

wan lôstet ir mich von im dô,

for freed you me from him then,

ir habet mich aber sider sô

you have me however since so

verklüteret mit swære,

entangled with grief,

daz mir noch lieber wære
that to-me still dearer would-be

der truhſæze ze manne genomen,
the steward as husband taken,

11625

dan ich mit iu wære ûz komen;
than I with you were out come;

wan swie tugendelôs er sî,
for however virtueless he be,

wære er mir keine wîle bî,
were he to-me any while by,

er lieze sîn untugent durch mich.
he would-leave his unvirtue for me.

got weiz, dar an erkante ouch ich,
God knows, there on recognized also I,

11630

daz ich im lieb wære.«
that I to-him dear were.»

Tristan sprach: »disiu mære
Tristan spoke: »these tidings

sint mir ein âventiure.
are to-me an adventure.

daz wider der natiure
that against the nature

kein herze tugentlîche tuo,
any heart virtuously do,

11635

da gehœret michel arbeit zuo:
there belongs great hardship to:

ez hât diu werlt vür eine lüge,
it has the world for a lie,

daz iemer unart garten müge.
that ever ill-nature cultivate may.

schœniu, gehabet ir iuch wol!
fair-one, bear you yourself well!

11640 in kurzen zîten ich iu sol
in short times I you shall
 einen künec ze hêren geben,
a king as lord give,
 an dem ir fröude und schœne leben,
in whom you joy and fair life,
 guot unde tugent und êre
goods and virtue and honor
 vindet iemer mêre.«
find ever more.«

11645 Hie mite strichen die kiele hin.
Here with struck the keels away.

si beide heten under in
they both had among them
 guoten wint und guote var.
good wind and good course.
 nu was diu fröuwîne schar,
now was the women's company,
 Îsôt und ir gesinde,
Isolde and her household,

11650 in wazzer unde in winde
in water and in wind
 des ungevertes ungewon.
of-the rough-passage unaccustomed.
 unlanges kâmen sî dâ von
not-long-after came they there of
 in ungewonliche nô.
into unaccustomed distress.
 Tristan ir meister dô gebôt,
Tristan their master then commanded,

11655 daz man ze lande schielte
that one to land should-steer
 und eine ruowe hielte.
and a rest should-bold.

nu man gelante in eine habe,
now one landed in a harbor,

nu gie daz volc almeistec abe
now went the folk mostly off

durch banekîe ûz an daz lant;
for pastime out onto the land;

nu gieng ouch Tristan zehant
now went also Tristan at-once

11660

begrüezen unde beschouwen
greet and view

die liechten sîne frouwen;
the bright his lady;

und alse er zuo ir nider gesaz
and when he to her down sat

und redeten diz unde daz
and talked this and that

von ir beider dingen,
of their of-both affairs,

11665

er bat im trinken bringen.
he bade him drink bring.

nune was dâ nieman inne
now was there no-one within

âne die küniginne,
except the queen,

wan kleiniu juncfröuwelîn.
but little young-ladies.

der einz sprach: »seht, hie stât wîn
of-them one spoke: »see, here stands wine

11670

in disem vezzelîne.«
in this little-vessel.«

nein, ezn was niht mit wîne,
no, it was not with wine,

doch ez ime gelîch wære,
though it him like were,

ez was diu wernde swære,
it was the lasting grief,

11675 diu endelôse herzenôt,
the endless heart's-distress,

von der si beide lâgen tôt.
from which they both lay dead.

nu was aber ir daz unrekant:
now was however to-her that unknown:

si stuont ûf und gie hin zehant,
she stood up and went thither at-once,

dâ daz tranc und daz glas
where the drink and the glass

11680 verborgen unde behalten was.
hidden and kept was.

Tristande ir meister bôt si daz:
to-Tristan her master offered she that:

er bôt Îsôte vûrbaz.
he offered Isolde further.

si tranc ungerne und über lanc
she drank unwillingly and over long

und gap dô Tristande, unde er tranc,
and gave then to-Tristan, and he drank,

11685 und wânden beide, ez wære wîn.
and thought both, it were wine.

iemitten gieng ouch Brangæne in
meanwhile went also Brangaene in

unde erkande daz glas
and recognized the glass

und sach wol, waz der rede was;
and saw well, what of-the speech was;

si erschrac sô sêre unde erkam,
she took-fright so sorely and was-startled,

11690 daz ez ir alle ir kraft benam,
that it her all her strength took,

und wart reht also ein tôte var.
and became right as a dead-person colored.

mit tôtem herzen gie si dar:
with dead heart went she thither:

si nam daz leide veige vaz,
she took the hateful doomed vessel,

si truog ez dannen und warf daz
she carried it thence and threw it

in den tobenden wilden sê:
into the raging wild sea: 11695

»owê mir armen!« sprachs, »owê,
»alas for-me poor-woman!« spoke-she, »alas,

daz ich zer werlde ie wart geboren!
that I to-the world ever was born!

ich arme, wie hân ich verlorn
I poor-woman, how have I lost

mîn êre und mîne triuwe!
my honor and my faithfulness!

daz ez got iemer riuwe,
that it God ever rue, 11700

daz ich an dise reise ie kam,
that I on this journey ever came,

daz mich der tôt dô niht ennam,
that me the death then not took,

dô ich an dise veige vart
when I on this doomed voyage

mit Îsôte ie bescheiden wart!
with Isolde ever appointed was!

ouwê Tristan unde Îsôt,
alas Tristan and Isolde, 11705

diz tranc ist iuwer beider tôt.«
this drink is of-you of-both death.»

The Drink

XXXV

Love, the waylayer of all hearts, enters both at once and makes them one; Isolde's hatred vanishes, and each is as clear to the other as a mirror. Yet both hide it for shame and doubt. Tristan thinks of faithfulness and honor and fights his desire, but Love, his hereditary mistress, draws him back. Isolde struggles like a bird in lime and sinks deeper at each move, until she yields to the man and to love. The poet sets out love's law: love grows fairer after its beginning.

Nu daz diu maget unde der man,

Now that the maiden and the man,

Îsôt unde Tristan,

Isolde and Tristan,

den tranc getrunken beide, sâ

the drink drunk both, at-once

11710 was ouch der werlde unmuoze dâ

was also the world's unrest there

Minne, aller herzen lâgærîn,

Love, of-all hearts waylayer,

und sleich zir beider herzen in.

and crept to-their of-both hearts in.

ê sîs ie wurden gewar,

before they-it ever became aware,

dô stiez sir sigevanen dar

then planted she-her victory-banner there

11715 und zôch si beide in ir gewalt:

and drew them both into her power:

si wurden ein und einvalt,

they became one and single,

die zwei und zwîvalt wâren ê;

who two and twofold were before;

si zwei enwâren dô nimê
they two were then no-more

widerwertic under in:
contrary among them:

Îsôte haz der was dô hin.
Isolde's hatred it was then gone.

11720

diu süenærinne Minne
the reconciler Love

diu hete ir beider sinne
she had their of-both senses

von hazze alsô gereinet,
from hate so purified,

mit liebe alsô vereinet,
with love so united,

daz ietweder dem andern was
that each to-the other was

11725

durchlûter also ein spiegelglas.
translucent as a mirror-glass.

si heten beide ein herze:
they had both one heart:

ir swære was sîn smerze,
her grief was his pain,

sîn smerze was ir swære;
his pain was her grief;

si wâren beide einbære
they were both matching

11730

an liebe unde an leide
in love and in sorrow

und hâlen sich doch beide,
and bid themselves yet both,

und tete daz zwîvel unde scham:
and did that doubt and shame:

si schamte sich, er tete alsam;
she shamed herself, he did likewise;

- 11735 **si** **zwîvelte** **an** **im**, **er** **an** **ir**.
she doubted of him, he of her.
- swie** **blint** **ir** **beider** **herzen** **gir**
however blind their of-both hearts' desire
- an** **einem** **willen** **wære**,
on one will were,
- in** **was** **doch** **beiden** **swære**
to-them was yet to-both heavy
- der** **urhap** **unde** **der** **begin**:
the origin and the beginning:
- 11740 **daz** **hal** **ir** **willen** **under** **in**.
that hid their will among them.
- Tristan**, **dô** **er** **der** **minne** **enpfant**,
Tristan, when he the love felt,
- er** **gedâhte** **sâ** **zehant**
he thought straightway at-once
- der** **triuwen** **unde** **der** **êren**
of-the faithfulness and of-the honor
- und** **wolte** **dannen** **kêren**.
and would thence turn.
- 11745 **»nein«**, **dâhte** **er** **allez** **wider** **sich**,
»no«, thought he ever against himself,
- »lâ** **stân**, **Tristan**, **versinne** **dich**,
»let stand, Tristan, bethink thyself,
- niemer** **genim** **es** **keine** **war**.«
never take of-it any heed.»
- sô** **wolte** **et** **ie** **daz** **herze** **dar**;
so would just ever the heart there;
- wider** **sînem** **willen** **kriegete** **er**,
against his will fought he,
- 11750 **er** **gerte** **wider** **sîner** **ger**:
he desired against his desire:
- er** **wolte** **dar** **und** **wolte** **dan**.
he would thither and would thence.

der gevangene man

the captive man

versuochte ez in dem stricke

tried it in the snare

ofte unde dicke

often and frequently

und was des lange stæte.

and was of-it long constant.

11755

der getriuwe der hæte

the faithful he bad

zwei nâhe gêndiu ungemach:

two near going discomforts:

swenne er ir under ougen sach

whenever he her under eyes looked

und ime diu süeze Minne

and him the sweet Love

sîn herze und sîne sinne

his heart and his senses

11760

mit ir begunde sêren,

with her began wound,

so gedâhte er ie der Êren,

so thought he ever of-the Honor,

diu nam in danne dervan.

she took him then therefrom.

hie mite sô kêrte in aber an

here with so turned him again on

Minne, sîn erbevogetîn:

Love, his hereditary-mistress:

11765

der muose er aber gevolgec sîn.

her must he again obedient be.

in muoten harte sêre

him grieved very sorely

sîn triuwe und sîn êre,

his faithfulness and his honor,

sô muote in aber diu Minne mê,
so grieved him however the Love more,

11770 diu tete im wirs danne wê:
she did him worse than woe:

si tete im mê ze leide
she did him more to sorrow

dan Triuwe und Êre beide.
than Faithfulness and Honor both.

sîn herze sach si lachende an
his heart looked her laughing at

und nam sîn ouge dervan.
and took his eye therefrom.

11775 als er ir aber niht ensach,
when he her however not saw,

daz was sîn meistez ungemach.
that was his greatest discomfort.

dicke besazte er sînen muot,
often set he his spirit,

als der gevangene tuot,
as the captive does,

wie er ir möhte entwenken,
how he her might escape,

11780 und begunde ofte denken:
and began often think:

»kêre dar oder her,
»turn thither or hither,

verwandele dise ger,
change this desire,

minne unde meine anderswâ!«
love and cherish elsewhere!«

sô was ie dirre stric dâ.
so was ever this snare there.

er nam sîn herze und sînen sin 11785
he took his heart and his sense

und suochte anderunge in in,
and sought change in them,

sone was ie niht dar inne
so was ever nothing there in

wan Îsôt unde minne.
but Isolde and love.

Alsam geschach Îsôte:
Likewise happened to-Isolde:

si versuochte ez ouch genôte, 11790
she tried it also closely,

ir was diz leben ouch ande.
to-her was this life also painful.

dô sî den lîm erkande
when she the lime recognized

der gespenstigen minne
of-the bewitching love

und sach wol, daz ir sinne
and saw well, that her senses

dar în versenket wâren, 11795
there in sunk were,

si begunde stades vâren,
she began shore seek,

si wolte ûz unde dan:
she would out and thence:

sô klebete ir ie der lîm an;
so stuck to-her ever the lime on;

der zôch si wider unde nider.
it drew her back and down.

diu schœne strebete allez wider 11800
the fair strove ever against

und stuont an iegelîchem trite.
and stood at each step.

si volgete ungerne mite;

she followed unwillingly along;

si versuochte ez manegen enden:

she tried it many ends:

mit füezen und mit henden

with feet and with hands

11805 nam sî vil manege kêre

took she very many-a turn

und versancte ie mêre

and sank ever more

ir hende unde ir füeze

her hands and her feet

in die blinden süeze

into the blind sweetness

des mannes unde der minne.

of-the man and of-the love.

11810 ir gelîmeten sinne

her limed senses

die enkunden niender hin gewegen

they could nowhere thither move

noch gebrucken noch gestegen

nor bridge nor step

halben fuoz noch halben trite,

half foot nor half step,

Minne diu enwære ie dâ mite.

Love she unless-were ever there with.

11815 Îsôt swar sî gedâhte,

Isolde wherever she thought,

swaz gedanke sî vür brâhte,

whatever thought she forth brought,

sone was ie diz noch daz dar an

so-not was ever this nor that there on

wan minne unde Tristan;

but love and Tristan;

und was daz allez tougen.

and was that all secret.

ir herze unde ir ougen

her heart and her eyes

11820

diu missehullen under in:

they disagreed among them:

diu schame diu jagete ir ougen hin,

the shame it chased her eyes away,

diu minne zôch ir herze dar.

the love drew her heart thither.

diu widerwertige schar,

the contrary company,

maget unde man, minne unde scham

maiden and man, love and shame

11825

diu was an ir sêre irresam:

it was in her sorely confusing:

diu maget diu wolte den man

the maiden she wanted the man

und warf ir ougen dervan;

and threw her eyes therefrom;

diu schame diu wolte minnen

the shame it would love

und brâhte es nieman innen.

and brought it no-one aware.

11830

waz truoc daz vür? scham unde maget,

what bore that forward? shame and maiden,

als al diu werlt gemeine saget,

as all the world commonly says,

diu sint ein alsô hæle dinc,

they are a so slippery thing,

sô kurze wernde ein ursprinc,

so short lasting a beginning,

sine habent sich niht lange wider.

they have themselves not long against.

11835

Îsôt diu leite ir krieg dernider

Isolde she laid her strife down

und tete als ez ir was gewant:

and did as it to-her was turned:

diu sigelôse ergap zehant

the victoryless-one gave-up at-once

ir lîp unde ir sinne

her body and her senses

11840 dem manne und der minne.

to-the man and to-the love.

si blicte underwîlen dar

she glanced at-times thither

und nam sîn tougenlîche war:

and took of-him secretly heed:

ir klâren ougen unde ir sin

her clear eyes and her sense

die gehullen dô wol under in.

they agreed then well among them.

11845 ir herze unde ir ougen

her heart and her eyes

diu schâcheten vil tougen

they robbed very secretly

und lieplîchen an den man.

and lovingly at the man.

der man der sach si wider an

the man he looked her back at

suoze und inneclîchen.

sweetly and inwardly.

11850 er begunde ouch entwîchen,

he began also yield,

dôs in diu minne niht erlie.

when-she him the love not released.

man unde maget si gâben ie
man and maiden they gave ever

ze iegelîchen stunden,
at each hours,

sô sî mit fuogen kunden,
as they with seemliness could,

ein ander ougenweide.
one another eye's-pasture.

11855

die gelieben dûhten beide
the lovers seemed both

ein ander schœner vil dan ê.
one another fairer much than before.

deist liebe reht, deist minnen ê:
that-is love's right, that-is love's law:

ez ist hiure und was ouch vert
it is this-year and was also last-year

und ist, die wîle minne wert,
and is, the while love lasts,

11860

under gelieben allen,
among lovers all,

dazs ein ander baz gefallen,
that-they one another better please,

sô liebe an in wahsende wirt,
when love in them growing becomes,

diu bluomen unde den wuocher birt
which blossoms and the increase bears

lieplîcher dinge,
of-lovely things,

11865

dan an dem ursprînge.
than at the origin.

diu wuocherhafte minne
the fruitful love

diu schœnet nâch beginne.
it beautifies after beginning.

daz ist der sâme, den si hât,
that is the seed, which it has,

11870 von dem si niemer zegât.
from which it never perishes.

si dunket schoener sît dan ê,
it seems fairer after than before,

dâ von sô tiuret minnen ê.
there from so becomes-dearer love's law.

diuhte minne sît als ê,
seemed love after as before,

so zegienge schiere minnen ê.
so would-perish quickly love's law.

Lameir

XXXVI

Love has taken two hearts off their course: neither can rest except in sight of the other, yet shame parts them. Love the dyer shows herself in their faces as they turn pale and red. Isolde recalls his coming to Dublin and how she twice knew him, in the bog and in the bath. Leaning on him, she sighs "lameir"; he weighs its three senses, loving, bitter, and sea, and asks only of the sea and bitterness. She denies both, and he confesses that she alone is his distress; she says the same.

11875 Die kiele stiezen aber an
The keels pushed again off

und fuoren frôliche dan,
and went joyfully thence,

wan also vil, daz Minne
except as much, that Love

zwei herze dar inne
two hearts there within

von ir strâze hete brâht.
from their road had brought.

- diu zwei diu wâren verdâht,
the two they were lost-in-thought, 11880
- bekumberet beide
troubled both
- mit dem lieben leide,
with the dear sorrow,
- daz solhiu wunder stellet:
that such wonders sets:
- daz honegende gellet,
that honeying galls,
- daz süezende siuret,
that sweetening sours, 11885
- daz touwende fiuret,
that bedewing fires,
- daz senftende smerzet,
that soothing pains,
- daz elliu herze entherzet
that all hearts unhearts
- und al die werlt verkêret:
and all the world perverts:
- daz hete sî versêret,
that had them wounded, 11890
- Tristanden unde Îsôte.
Tristan and Isolde.
- si twanc ein nôt genôte
them forced a distress closely
- und in seltsæner ahte:
and in strange manner:
- ir dewederez enmahte
of-them neither could
- gehaben ruowe noch gemach,
have rest nor comfort, 11895
- wan sôz daz andere sach.
except when-it the other saw.

so si aber ein ander sâhen,

when they however one another saw,

daz gieng in aber nâhen,

that went them again near,

wan sî enmohten under in zwein

for they could between them two

11900 ir willen niht gehabt inein:

their will not have together:

daz geschuof diu fremede und diu scham,

that caused the strangeness and the shame,

diu in ir wunne benam;

which them their bliss took;

so si eteswenne tougen

when they sometimes secretly

mit gelîmeten ougen

with limed eyes

11905 ein ander solten nemen war,

one another should take heed,

sô wart ir lîch gelîche var

so became their body alike colored

dem herzen und dem sinne.

to-the heart and to-the sense.

Minne diu verwærinne,

Love the dyer,

die endûhte es niht dâ mite genuoc,

her seemed it not there with enough,

11910 daz mans in edelen herzen truoc

that one-it in noble hearts bore

verholne unde tougen,

bidden and secretly,

sine wolte under ougen

unless-she would under eyes

ouch offenbâren ir gewalt:

also reveal her power:

der was an in zwein manicvalt.

it was in them two manifold.

unlange inein ir varwe schein,

not-long together their color shone,

11915

ir varwe schein unlange inein:

their color shone not-long together:

si wehselten genôte

they changed closely

bleich wider rôte;

pale for red;

si wurden rôt unde bleich,

they became red and pale,

als ez diu Minne in understreich.

as it the Love them understroked.

11920

hie mite erkande ietwederez wol,

here with recognized each well,

als man an solhen dingen sol,

as one in such things shall,

daz eteswaz von minnen

that something of love

in ietwederes sinnen

in each's senses

ze dem andern was gewant,

to the other was turned,

11925

unde begunden ouch zehant

and began also at-once

lieplîche inein gebâren,

lovingly together behave,

zîte unde state vâren

time and chance seek

ir rûne und ir mære.

their whisper and their tale.

- 11930 **der Minnen wildenære**
of-the Love hunters
leiten ein ander dicke
laid one another often
ir netze unde ir stricke,
their nets and their snares,
ir warte unde ir lâge
their watch and their ambush
mit antwürte und mit frâge:
with answer and with question:
- 11935 **si triben vil mære under in.**
they drove many tales among them.
Îsôte rede und ir begin
Isolde's speech and her beginning
daz was vil rehte in megede wîs:
that was very right in maiden's way:
si kam ir trût und ir amîs
she came her darling and her beloved
al umbe her von verren an:
all around hither from afar on:
- 11940 **von ende mante sî her dan,**
from end reminded she hither thence,
wie er ze Develîne
how he to Dublin
in einem schiffelîne
in a little-boat
geflozzen wunt und eine kam,
floated wounded and alone came,
wie in ir muoter an sich nam
how him her mother to herself took
- 11945 **und wies in ouch generte;**
and how-she him also healed;
von allem dem geverte,
of all the conduct,

wie si selbe in sîner pflege

how she herself in his care

schrîben lernete alle wege,

writing learned all ways,

latîne unde seitspil.

Latin and string-play.

der umberede der was vil,

of-the roundabout-talk it was much,

11950

die si ime vûr ougen leite

which she him before eyes laid

von sîner manheite

of his manhood

und ouch von dem serpande;

and also of the serpent;

und wie sin zwir erkande

and how she-him twice recognized

in dem mose und in dem bade.

in the bog and in the bath.

11955

diu rede was under in gerade,

the speech was among them even,

si seite im und er seite ir.

she told him and he told her.

»â«, sprach Îsôt, »dô ez sich mir

»ab«, spoke Isolde, »when it itself to-me

ze alsô guoten staten getruoc,

to so good aid bore,

daz ich iuch in dem bade niht sluoc,

that I you in the bath not slew,

11960

got hêrre, wie gewarb ich sô!

God lord, how acted I so!

daz ich nu weiz, wiste ich ez dô,

what I now know, knew I it then,

binamen sô wære ez iuwer tô. «

truly so would-be it your death. «

»war umbe«, sprach er, »schœne Îsôt?

»what for«, spoke he, »fair Isolde?

11965 waz wirret iu? waz wizzet ir?«

what troubles you? what know you?»

»swaz ich weiz, daz wirret mir;

»whatever I know, that troubles me;

swaz ich sihe, daz tuot mir wê:

whatever I see, that does me woe:

mich müejet himel unde sê;

me wearies heaven and sea;

lîp unde leben daz swæret mich.«

body and life that grieves me.»

11970 si sturte unde leinde sich

she propped and leaned herself

mit ir ellebogen an in:

with her elbow on him:

daz was der belde ein begin.

that was of-the boldness a beginning.

ir spiegellichten ougen

her mirror-bright eyes

diu volleten tougen.

they filled secretly.

11975 ir begunde ir herze quellen,

her began her heart well-up,

ir süezer munt ûf swellên,

her sweet mouth up swell,

ir houbet daz wac allez nider.

her head that weighed all down.

ir friunt begunde ouch sî dar wider
her friend began also her there against

mit armen umbevâhen
with arms embrace

ze verre noch ze nâhen
too far nor too near

11980

niwan in gastes wîse.
only in stranger's manner.

er sprach suoze unde lîse:
he spoke sweetly and softly:

»ei, schœne sîeze, saget mir:
»ah, fair sweet-one, tell me:

waz wirret iu, waz klaget ir?«
what troubles you, what lament you?«

Der Minnen vederspil Îsôt,
Of-the Love falcon Isoldé,

11985

»lameir«, sprach sî, »daz ist mîn nôt,
»lameir«, spoke she, »that is my distress,

lameir daz swæret mir den muot,
lameir that grieves me the spirit,

lameir ist, daz mir leide tuot.«
lameir is, what me sorrow does.«

dô sî lameir sô dicke sprach,
when she lameir so often spoke,

er bedâhte unde besach
he considered and examined

11990

anclîchen unde kleine
closely and minutely

des selben wortes meine.
of-the same word's meaning.

sus begunde er sich versinnen,
thus began he himself bethink,

l'ameir daz wære minnen,
l'ameir that were loving,

- 11995 l'ameir bitter, la meir mer:
l'ameir bitter, la meir sea:
 der meine der dûhte in ein her.
the meaning it seemed-to him a host.
 er übersach der driër ein
he overlooked of-the three one
 unde frâgete von den zwein:
and asked about the two:
 er versweic die minne,
he kept-silent-about the love,
- 12000 ir beider vogetinne,
of-them of-both mistress,
 ir beider trôst, ir beider ger;
of-them of-both comfort, of-them of-both desire;
 mer unde sûr beredete er.
sea and sour spoke-of he.
 »ich wæne«, sprach er, »schœene Îsôt,
»I think«, spoke he, »fair Isolde,
 mer unde sûr sint iuwer nôt;
sea and sour are your distress;
- 12005 iu smecket mer unde wint;
to-you tastes sea and wind;
 ich wæne, iu diu zwei bitter sint.«
I think, to-you the two bitter are.»
 »nein, hêrre, nein! waz saget ir?
»no, lord, no! what say you?
 der dewederez wirret mir,
of-them neither troubles me,
 mir ensmecket weder luft noch sê:
to-me tastes neither air nor sea:
- 12010 lameir al eine tuot mir wê.«
lameir all alone does me woe.»
 dô er des wortes zende kam,
when he of-the word to-end came,

minne dar inne vernam,

love there within perceived,

er sprach vil tougenlîche zir:

he spoke very secretly to-her:

»entriuwen, schoene, als ist ouch mir,

»in-truth, fair, so is also to-me,

lameir und ir, ir sît mîn nôt.

lameir and you, you are my distress.

12015

herzefrouwe, liebe Îsôt,

heart's-lady, dear Isolde,

ir eine und iuwer minne

you alone and your love

ir habt mir mîne sinne

you have me my senses

gâr verkêret unde benomen,

wholly perverted and taken,

ich bin ûzer wege komen

I am out-of way come

12020

sô starke und alsô sêre:

so strongly and so sorely:

ich erhol mich niemer mêre.

I recover myself never more.

mich müejet und mich swæret,

me wearies and me grieves,

mir swachet unde unmæret

to-me weakens and becomes-indifferent

allez, daz mîn ouge siht:

all, that my eye sees:

12025

in al der werlde enist mir niht

in all the world is to-me nothing

in mînem herzen lieb wan ir.«

in my heart dear but you.«

Îsôt sprach: »hêrre, als sît ir mir.«

Isolde spoke: »lord, so are you to-me.«

Brangaene's Counsel

XXXVII

Once they know their hearts are one, they kiss and seek every chance to be together. Brangaene sees their love and fears that it will be their death, since they take no food. When she asks, Tristan makes her pledge her faithfulness first, then tells her they are dying of love and that she alone stands in their way. Isolde confirms it. Brangaene sees the devil's work in it and yields: rather than let them die, she will give them their chance, but the three must keep the secret.

Do die gelieben under in
When the lovers among them

12030 beide erkanden einen sin,
both recognized one sense,

ein herze und einen willen,
one heart and one will,

ez begunde in beidiu stillen
it began them both still

und offenen ir ungemach.
and open their discomfort.

ietwederez sprach unde sach
each spoke and looked

12035 daz ander beltlicher an:
the other more-boldly at:

der man die maget, diu maget den man.
the man the maiden, the maiden the man.

fremde under in diu was dô hin:
strangeness among them it was then gone:

er kuste sî und sî kust in
he kissed her and she kissed him

lieplichen unde suoze.
lovingly and sweetly.

daz was der minnen buoze 12040
that was the love's remedy

ein sæleclīcher anevanc.
a blessed beginning.

ietwederz schancte unde tranc
each poured and drank

die sūeze, diu von herzen gie.
the sweetness, which from heart went.

sô sî die state gewunnen ie,
as-often-as they the chance won ever,

sô gie der wehsel under in 12045
so went the exchange among them

slīchende her unde hin
creeping hither and thither

vil tougenlīchen unde alsô,
very secretly and so,

daz nieman in der werlde dô
that no-one in the world then

ir willen unde ir muot bevant
their will and their spirit found-out

wan sî, der er doch was erkant. 12050
except her, to-whom it yet was known.

Brangæne, diu wîse,
Brangaene, the wise,

diu blicte dicke lîse
she glanced often softly

und vil tougenlīche dar
and very secretly thither

und nam ir tougenheite war
and took of-their secrecy heed

und dâhte dicke wider sich: 12055
and thought often against herself:

»ouwê, nû verstân ich mich,
»alas, now understand I myself,

diu minne hebet mit disen an.«

the love begins with these on.«

vil schiere wart, daz sî began

very soon was-it, that she began

den ernest an in beiden sehen

the earnest in them both see

12060 und ûzen an ir lîbe spehen

and outside on their body perceive

den inneren smerzen

the inner pain

ir muotes unde ir herzen.

of-their spirit and of-their heart.

si muote ir beider ungemach,

her grieved of-them of-both discomfort,

wan sî si zallen zîten sach

for she them at-all times saw

12065 ameiren unde amûren,

loving and courting,

siuften unde trûren,

sighing and mourning,

trahten und pensieren,

pondering and brooding,

ir varwe wandelieren.

their color changing.

sin genâmen nie vor trahte war

they took never for thought heed

12070 dekeiner slahte lîpnar,

of-any kind nourishment,

biz sî der mangel und daz leit

until them the lack and the sorrow

an dem lîbe als überstreit,

on the body so overcame,

daz es Brangænen angest nam

that it Brangaene fear took

und in die vorhte dâ von kam,

and into the dread there of came,

ez wære ir beider ende,

it were of-them of-both end,

12075

und dâhte: »nû genende,

and thought: »now venture,

ervar, waz dirre mære sî.«

find-out, what this tale be.«

si gesaz in eines tages bî

she sat them one day by

heinlîchen unde lîse,

secretly and softly,

diu stolze, diu wîse:

the proud, the wise:

12080

»hie ist nieman«, sprach si, »wan wir driu:

»here is no-one«, spoke she, »but we three:

saget mir ir zwei, waz wirret iu?

tell me you two, what troubles you?

ich sihe iuch zallen stunden

I see you at-all hours

mit trahte gebunden,

with thought bound,

siuften, trûren unde klagen.«

sighing, mourning and lamenting«

12085

»höfsche, getorste ichz iu gesagen,

»courtly-one, dared I-it you tell,

ich sagete ez iu«, sprach Tristan.

I would-tell it you«, spoke Tristan.

»jâ hêrre, vil wol: sprechet an;

»yes lord, very well: speak on;

swaz ir wellet, daz saget mir.«

whatever you will, that tell me.«

- 12090 »sæligiu, guotiu«, sprach er zir,
»blessed, good-one«, spoke he to-her,
 »in getar niht sprechen vürbaz,
»I dare not speak further,
 irn gewisset uns ê daz
unless-you assure us before that
 mit triuwen oder mit eiden,
with faithfulness or with oaths,
 daz ir uns armen beiden
that you us poor both
- 12095 guot unde genædic wellet wesen:
good and merciful will be:
 anders sô sîn wir ungenesen.«
otherwise so are we unsaved.«
 Brangæne bôt ir triuwe hin:
Brangaene offered her faithfulness thither:
 si gelobete unde gewissete in
she promised and assured them
 mit ir triuwen und mit gote
with her faithfulness and with God
- 12100 ze lebene nâch ir gebote.
to live after their command.
 »getriuwiu, guotiu«, sprach Tristan,
»faithful, good-one«, spoke Tristan,
 »nu sehet got ze vorderst an
»now look God at first on
 und dâ nâch iuwer sælekeit:
and there after your blessedness:
 bedenket unser zweier leit
consider our two sorrow
- 12105 und unser angestlîche nôt.
and our fearful distress.
 ich armer und diu arme Îsôt,
I poor-man and the poor Isolde,

ine weiz, wiez uns ergangen ist,
I-not know, how-it us gone is,

wir zwei wir sîn in kurzer frist
we two we are in short time

unsinnic worden beide
senseless become both

mit wunderlichem leide:
with wondrous sorrow:

12110

wir sterben von minnen
we die of love

und enkunnen niht gewinnen
and can not gain

weder zît noch state derzuo;
neither time nor chance thereto;

ir irret uns spâte unde fruoz,
you hinder us late and early,

und sicherliche sterben wir;
and surely die we;

12115

da ist nieman schuldic an wan ir:
there is no-one guilty on but you:

unser tôt und unser leben
our death and our life

diu sint in iuwer hant gegeben.
they are in your hand given.

hie mite ist iu genuoc gesaget.
here with is to-you enough said.

Brangæne, sæligiu maget,
Brangaene, blessed maiden,

12120

nu helfet unde genâdet ir
now help and have-mercy you

iuwerre frouwen unde mir!«
on-your lady and on-me!«

Brangæne wider Îsôte sprach:
Brangaene toward Isolde spoke:

»frouwe, ist iuwer ungemach,

»lady, is your discomfort,

12125 als er dâ giht, von solher nôt?»

as he there avows, of such distress?»

»jâ, herzeniftel«, sprach Îsôt.

»yes, heart's-niece«, spoke Isolde.

Brangæne sprach: »daz riuwe got,

Brangaene spoke: »that rue God,

daz der vâlant sînen spot

that the devil his mockery

mit uns alsus gemachet hât!

with us thus made has!

12130 nu sihe ich wol, es ist niht rât,

now see I well, it is no counsel,

ine müeze durch iuch beide

unless-I must for you both

mir selber nâch leide

for-me self to sorrow

und iu nâch laster werben;

and for-you to disgrace strive;

ê ich iuch lâze sterben,

before I you let die,

12135 ich wil iu guote state ê lân.

I will you good chance before leave.

swes ir wellet ane gân,

whatever you will on go,

durch mich enlât nie mêre,

for me let never more,

swes ir durch iuwer êre

whatever you for your honor

niht gerne wellet lâzen;

not gladly will leave;

swâ ir iuch aber gemâzen 12140
where you yourselves however restrain

und enthaben müget an dirre tât,
and abstain may in this deed,

da enthabet iuch, daz ist mîn rât.
there abstain yourselves, that is my counsel.

lât diz laster under uns drîn
let this disgrace among us three

verswigen unde beliben sîn.
kept-silent and remained be.

breitet irz iht mêre, 12145
(if)-spread you-it at-all more,

ez gât an iuwer êre;
it goes on your honor;

ervert ez ieman âne uns driu
(if)-learns it anyone without us three

ir sît verlorn und ich mit iu.
you are lost and I with you.

herzefrouwe, schoene Îsôt,
heart's-lady, fair Isolde,

iuwer leben und iuwer tô 12150
your life and your death

diu sint in iuwer pflege ergeben:
they are into your care given:

leitet tô unde leben,
lead death and life,

als iu ze muote gestê.
as to-you to spirit stand.

nâch dirre zît enhabet nimê
after this time have no-more

dekeine vorhte her ze mir. 12155
any fear hither to me.

swaz iu gevalle, daz tuot ir.«
whatever to-you please, that do you.»

Love's Seed

XXXVIII

That night Love, the physician, leads Tristan to Isolde's bed and gives each to the other as medicine, binding their hearts in a snare never loosed. The poet turns to love itself: thinking of it, his heart grows greater than the mountain Setmunt. Lovers today sow henbane and expect lilies and roses; they till love with falsehood and guile and blame her for the pain they reap, while the steady friend's spirit, which one finds little now, bears the rose with the thorn and joy at the end of care.

Des nahtes, dô diu schœne lac,

Of-the night, when the fair lay,

ir triure unde ir trahte pflac

her sadness and her thought tended

nâch ir trûtamîse,

for her darling-beloved,

12160 nu kam geslichen lîse

now came crept softly

ze der kemenâten in

to the chamber in

ir amîs unde ir arzâtîn,

her beloved and her physician,

Tristan und diu Minne:

Tristan and the Love:

Minne diu arzâtinne

Love the physician

12165 si fuorte ze handen

she led by hands

ir siechen Tristanden.

her sick-one Tristan.

ouch vants Îsôte ir siechen dâ.

also found-she Isolde her sick-one there.

die siechen beide nam si sâ
the sick both took she at-once

und gab in ir, im sîe
and gave him to-her, to-him her

ein ander ze arzâtîe. 12170
one another as medicine.

wer hæte ouch dise beide
who would-have also these both

von dem gemeinen leide
from the common sorrow

vereinet unde bescheiden,
united and separated,

wan einunge an in beiden,
except union in them both,

der stric ir beider sinne? 12175
the snare of-their of-both senses?

Minne, diu strickærinne
Love, the snarer

diu stricte zwei herze an in zwein
she snared two hearts in them two

mit dem stricke ir süeze inein
with the snare of-her sweetness together

mit alsô grôzer meisterschaft,
with so great mastery,

mit alsô wunderlîcher kraft, 12180
with so wondrous might,

daz si unrelæset wâren
that they unloosed were

in allen ir jâren.
in all their years.

Ein langiu rede von minnen
A long speech of love

diu swæret höfschen sinnen:
it grieves courtly senses:

12185 kurz rede von guoten minnen

short speech of good love

diu guotet guoten sinnen.

it does-good to-good senses.

Swie lützel ich in mînen tagen

However little I in my days

des lieben leides habe getragen,

of-the dear sorrow have borne,

des senften herzesmerzen,

of-the soft heart's-pain,

12190 der innerhalp des herzen

which inside the heart

sô rehte sanfte unsanfte tuot,

so right softly unsoftly does,

mir wîssaget doch mîn muot,

to-me prophesies yet my spirit,

des ich im wol gelouben sol,

of-which I it well believe shall,

den zwein gelieben wære wol

to-the two lovers were well

12195 und sanfte in ir muote,

and softly in their spirit,

dô sî die leiden huote,

when they the hateful watch,

die wâren suht der minne,

which were sickness of-the love,

der Minnen vîendinne,

the Love's she-enemy,

von ir stîgen heten brâht.

from their paths had brought.

12200 ich hân von in zwein vil gedâht

I have of them two much thought

und gedenke hiute und alle tage;

and think today and all days;

swenne ich liebe und senede klage
whenever I love and yearning lament

vür mîniu ougen breite
before my eyes spread

und ir gelegenheite
and their circumstance

in mînem herzen ahte,
in my heart weigh,

12205

sô wahsent mîne trahte
so grow my thoughts

und muot mîn hergeselle,
and spirit my army-companion,

als er in die wolken welle.
as he into the clouds would.

swenne ich bedenke sunder
whenever I consider apart

daz wunder und daz wunder,
the wonder and the wonder,

12210

daz man an liebe funde,
which one in love should-find,

der ez gesuochen kunde;
who it seek could;

waz fröude an liebe læge,
what joy in love should-lie,

der ir mit triuwen pflæge:
who it with faithfulness should-tend:

sô wirt mîn herze sâ zestunt
so becomes my heart straightway at-once

12215

grœzer danne setmunt;
greater than Setmunt;

und erbarmet mich diu minne
and moves-to-pity me the love

von allem mînem sinne,
from all my sense,

daz meistic alle, die der lebent,
that almost all, who there live,

12220 an minnen hangent unde klebent
on love hang and cling

und ir doch nieman rehte tuot.
and her yet no-one rightly does.

wir wellen alle haben muot
we will all have spirit

und mit minnen umbe gân.
and with love about go.

nein, minne ist niht alsô getân
no, love is not so made

12225 als wirs ein ander machen
as we-it one another make

mit velschlichen sachen.
with falsifying matters.

wir nemen der dinge unrehte war,
we take of-the things wrong heed,

wir sæjen bilsensâmen dar
we sow henbane-seed thither

und wellen danne, daz uns der
and want then, that us it

12230 liljen unde rôsen ber.
lilies and roses bear.

entriuwen, des mac niht gewesen;
in-truth, of-it may not be;

wir müezen daz her wider lesen,
we must that hither back gather,

daz dâ vor gewerket wirt,
what there before worked becomes,

und nemen, daz uns der sâme birt.
and take, what us the seed bears.

wir müezen snîden unde mæn 12235
we must cut and mow

daz selbe, daz wir dar gesæn.
the same, that we there sowed.

wir bûwen die minne
we till the love

mit gegelletem sinne,
with galled sense,

mit valsche und mit âkust
with falsehood and with guile

und suoehen danne an ir die lust 12240
and seek then in her the delight

des libes und des herzen:
of-the body and of-the heart:

sone birt si niuwan smerzen,
so-not bears she only pain,

unguot und unfruht unde unart,
ill and fruitlessness and ill-nature,

als ez an ir gebûwen wart;
as it in her tilled was;

als ez uns danne riuwe birt 12245
when it us then rue bears

und innerhalp des herzen swirt
and inside the heart festers

und tœtet uns dar inne,
and kills us there within,

sô zîhen wirs die minne
so accuse we-it the love

unde schuldigen sî dar an,
and blame her there on,

diu schulde nie dar an gewan. 12250
who guilt never there on gained.

wir sæjen alle valscheit,
we sow all falsehood,

sô snîden laster unde leit.

so cut disgrace and sorrow.

tuo uns daz leit iht sêre wê,

(if)-do us the sorrow at-all sorely woe,

sô bedenken ez ê,

so consider it before,

12255 sæjen bezzer unde baz

sow better and better

unde snîden ouch daz.

and cut also that.

wir die zer werlde haben muot,

we who to-the world have spirit,

swie sô er sî bæse oder guot,

however so it be evil or good,

wie tuon wir unseren tagen,

how do we our days,

12260 die wir vertriben unde verjagen

which we pass and chase

in dem namen der minne

in the name of-the love

und vinden niht dar inne

and find nothing there within

niwan die selben arbeit,

but the same hardship,

die wir haben an sî geleit,

which we have on her laid,

12265 misselinge und ungeschicht:

failure and misfortune:

des guoten vinden wir dâ niht,

of-the good find we there nothing,

des unser iegelicher gert

of-which of-us each-one desires

und des wir alle sîn entwert.

and of-which we all are deprived.

daz ist der stæte friundes muot,

that is the steady friend's spirit,

der stæteclîche sanfte tuot,

which steadily softly does,

12270

der die rôsen bî dem dorne treit,

which the roses by the thorn bears,

die senfte bî der arbeit;

the ease by the hardship;

an dem ie lît verborgen

in which ever lies hidden

diu wunne bî den sorgen,

the bliss by the cares,

der an dem ende ie fröude birt,

which at the end ever joy bears,

12275

als ofte als er beswæret wirt,

as often as it grieved becomes,

den vindet ieman lützel nuo:

that finds anyone little now:

alsô vorwerke wir dar zuo.

so forfeit we there to.

Love Hunted

XXXIX

Love, the poet complains, has been hunted into the farthest corner; only her worn-out name remains, and she goes begging from house to house. False lovers deceive themselves, yet old tales of faithful love warm the heart. Tristan and Isolde, freed of shame, pay love her willing tribute throughout the voyage, though they fear that she must become the wife of a man she does not want, and her womanhood grieves them both. As land comes in sight they are afraid, and the counsel falls to Isolde.

Ez ist vil wâr, daz man dâ saget:

It is very true, what one there says:

12280 »Minne ist getriben unde gejaget

»Love is driven and hunted

in den endeleisten ort.«

into the farthest corner.«

wir haben an ir niwan daz wort:

we have of her only the word:

uns ist niwan der name beliben

to-us is only the name remained

und haben ouch den alsô zetriben

and have also it so worn-out

12285 alsô verwortet unde vernamet,

so worded-away and named-away,

daz sich diu müede ir namen schamet

that herself the weary-one of-her name is-ashamed

und ir daz wort unmæret;

and to-her the word becomes-indifferent;

si swachet unde swæret

she weakens and grieves

ir selber ûf der erde;

to-her self on the earth;

12290 diu êrelôse unwerde,

the honorless unworthy-one,

si slîchet under hûsen biten

she creeps among houses begging

und treit von lasterlîchen siten

and carries of shameful manners

gemanicvaltet einen sac,

multiplied a sack,

in dems ir diube und ir bejac

in which-she her theft and her gain

ir selbes munde verseit

to-her own mouth denies

12295

und ez ze strâze veile treit.

and it to street for-sale carries.

owê! den market schaffen wir:

alas! the market make we:

daz wunder trîben wir mit ir

the wonder drive we with her

und wellen des unschuldic sîn.

and want of-it innocent be.

Minne, aller herzen künigîn,

Love, of-all hearts queen,

12300

diu frîe, diu eine,

the free, the unique,

diu ist umbe kouf gemeine.

she is for purchase common.

wie habe wir unser hêrschaft

how have we our lordship

an ir gemachet zinshaft!

over her made tributary!

wir haben ein böese conterfeit

we have a wicked counterfeit

12305

in daz vingerlîn geleit

into the little-ring laid

und triegen uns dâ selbe mite.

and deceive ourselves there self with.

ez ist ein armer trügesite,
it is a poor deceit-custom,

der friunden alsô liuget,
who to-friends so lies,

12310 daz er sich selben triuget.
that he himself self deceives.

wir valschen minnære,
we false lovers,

der Minnen trügenære,
of-the Love deceivers,

wie vergânt uns unser tage,
how pass to-us our days,

daz wir unserre klage
that we to-our lament

12315 sô selten liebez ende geben!
so seldom dear end give!

wie vertuon wir unser leben
how waste we our life

âne lieb und âne guot!
without love and without good!

nu gît uns doch daz guoten muot,
now gives us yet that good spirit,

daz uns ze nihte bestât.
which to-us to nothing stands.

12320 swaz ieman schœner mære hât
whatever anyone of-fair tales has

von friuntlichen dingen,
of friendly things,

swaz wir mit rede vür bringen
whatever we with speech forth bring

von den, die wîlent wâren
of those, who once were

vor manegen hundert jâren,
before many hundred years,

- daz tuot uns in dem herzen wol 12325
that does us in the heart well
- und sîn der selben state sô wol,
and are of-the same state so well,
- daz lützel ieman wære
that little anyone were
- getriuwe unde gewære
faithful and true
- und wider den friunt âne âkust,
and toward the friend without guile,
- ern möhte sus getâne lust 12330
he-not might so made delight
- von sîn selbes sachen
from his own affairs
- in sînem herzen machen,
in his heart make,
- wan uns daz selbe zaller zît
for to-us that same at-all time
- mit jâmer under fûezen lît,
with misery under feet lies,
- dâ von ez allez ûf erstât: 12335
there from it all up arises:
- deist triuwe, diu von herzen gât;
that-is faithfulness, which from heart goes;
- diu treit sich uns vergebene an;
it carries itself to-us for-nothing on;
- sô kêre wir daz ouge dan
so turn we the eye thence
- und trîben die süezen
and drive the sweet-one
- unruochlich under fûezen; 12340
carelessly under feet;

wir haben si mit unwerde

we have her with unworth

vertreten in die erde;

trodden into the earth;

ob wir si gerne suochten dâ,

if we her gladly sought there,

wir enwizzen alles gâhes wâ.

we not-know at-all quickly where.

12345 sô guot, sô lônære

so good, so rewardable

triuwe under friunden wære,

faithfulness among friends were,

war umbe lieben wir si niht?

what for love we her not?

ein blic, ein innecklich gesiht

a glance, an inward look

ûz herzeliebes ougen

out-of heart's-dear eyes

12350 der leschet âne lougen

it quenches without lie

hundert tûsent smerzen

hundred thousand pains

des lîbes und des herzen.

of-the body and of-the heart.

ein kus in liebes munde,

a kiss in dear-one's mouth,

der von des herzen grunde

whith from the heart's ground

12355 her ûf geslichen kâme,

hither up crept should-come,

ahî, waz der benæme

ah, what that would-take-away

seneder sorge und herzenôt!

of-yearning care and heart's-distress!

Ich weiz wol, Tristan unde Îsôt,
I know well, Tristan and Isolde,
 die gebitelôsen beide,
the impatient both,
 benâmen ouch ir leide 12360
took also their sorrow
 unde ir triure ein ander vil,
and their mourning one another much,
 dô sî begriffen daz zil
when they reached the goal
 gemeines willen under in.
of-common will among them.
 jener gelange was dô hin,
that longing was then gone,
 der die gedanken anget. 12365
which the thoughts constrains.
 swes gelieben gelanget,
whatever lovers long-for,
 des tribens under in genuoc,
of-it drove-they among them enough,
 sô sich diu zît alsô getruoc,
as-often-as itself the time so bore,
 sô sî zir state kâmen,
as-often-as they to-their chance came,
 si gâben unde nâmen 12370
they gave and took
 mit getriuwelîchem sinne
with faithful sense
 in selben unde der minne
to-them selves and to-the love
 willigen zins unde zol.
willing tribute and toll.

in was vil inneclîche wol

to-them was very inwardly well

12375 an der reise und an der vart;

on the journey and on the voyage;

dô diu fremede hine wart,

when the strangeness gone became,

dô was ir heinlîche

then was their intimacy

rîlîch unde rîche.

splendid and rich.

und was daz wîsheit unde sin:

and was that wisdom and sense:

12380 wan die sich helent under in,

for those-who themselves hide among them,

sît daz si sich enbârent

since that they themselves reveal

und danne ir schame vârent

and then their shame waylay

und gestent sich an liebe,

and make-strange themselves toward love,

die sint ir selber diebe.

they are of-them self thieves.

12385 sô sî sich danne ie mêre helent,

so they themselves then ever more hide,

sô sî ie mêre in selben stelent

so they ever more from-them selves steal

und mischent lieb mit leide.

and mix joy with sorrow.

dise gelieben beide

these lovers both

die enhâlen sich ze nihte:

they bid themselves at nothing:

mit rede und mit gesichte 12390
with speech and with look

wâren si heinlich under in.
were they intimate among them.

sus triben sî die reise hin
thus drove they the journey away

mit wunneclîchem lebene
with blissful living

und doch niht gâr vergebene.
and yet not wholly for-nothing.

in tete diu vorvorhte wê: 12395
them did the fore-fear woe:

sî bevorhten daz ê
they feared that before

dâ ez ouch sider zuo kam,
where it also since to came,

daz in sît fröude vil benam
what them since joy much took

und brâhte sî ze maneger nôt:
and brought them to many-a distress:

daz was daz, daz diu schoene Îsôt 12400
that was that, that the fair Isolde

dem manne werden solte,
to-the man become should,

dem sî niht werden wolte.
to-whom she not become would.

ouch twanc si beide noch ein leit:
also forced them both still a sorrow:

daz was Îsôte wîpheit.
that was Isolde's womanbood.

hier umbe was in leide, 12405
here about was to-them sorrowful,

diz leidete si beide.
this grieved them both.

doch was in disiu swære

yet was to-them this grief

lîhte unde tragebære,

light and bearable,

wan sî ir willen under in zwein

for they their will between them two

12410 frîlîche heten inein

freely had together

dicke und ze manegem mâle.

often and at many-a time.

Nu daz si Kurnewâle

Now that they Cornwall

gevuoren alsô nâhen

voyaged so near

daz sî daz lant wol sâhen,

that they the land well saw,

12415 des fröuten sî sich alle dô:

of-it rejoiced they themselves all then:

si wâren sîn alle frô,

they were of-it all glad,

wan eine Tristan unde Îsôt,

except alone Tristan and Isolde,

der angst was ez unde ir nôt:

of-them fear was it and their distress:

der wille wære der geschehen,

the will were of-them happened,

12420 sine hæten niemer lant gesehen.

they would-have never land seen.

diu vorhte ir beider êren

the fear of-their of-both honor

diu begunde ir herze sêren,

it began their heart wound,

sine kunden sich berâten nie,

they could themselves advise never,

waz sî getæten oder wie,
what they should-do or how,

daz Îsôte wîpheit
that Isolde's womanhood

12425

dem kûnege würde verseit;
to-the king should-be denied;

und doch, swie unrâtbære
and yet, however helpless

kindesche minnære
childish lovers

in ir kintheit sint,
in their childhood are,

der rât geviel doch an daz kint.
the counsel fell yet to the child.

12430

Sô minne an tumben kinden
When love in foolish children

ir spil gerâtet vinden,
her play to-succeed finds,

sô mugen wir an den kinden
so may we in the children

witze unde liste vinden.
wit and cunning find.

